



# **Zephaniah**

**translationNotes**

v11

# Copyrights & Licensing

## License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to [help@door43.org](mailto:help@door43.org)

**Version:** 11

**Published:** 2017-11-29

## Table of Contents

<b>Copyrights &amp; Licensing</b> . . . . .	<b>1</b>
<b>translationNotes</b> . . . . .	<b>7</b>
Introduction to Zephaniah . . . . .	7
Zephaniah 01 General Notes . . . . .	9
Zephaniah 1:1-3 . . . . .	10
Zephaniah 1:4-6 . . . . .	13
Zephaniah 1:7-9 . . . . .	16
Zephaniah 1:10-11 . . . . .	19
Zephaniah 1:12-13 . . . . .	21
Zephaniah 1:14-16 . . . . .	23
Zephaniah 1:17-18 . . . . .	26
Zephaniah 02 General Notes . . . . .	28
Zephaniah 2:1-3 . . . . .	29
Zephaniah 2:4-5 . . . . .	32
Zephaniah 2:6-7 . . . . .	34
Zephaniah 2:8-9 . . . . .	36
Zephaniah 2:10-11 . . . . .	38
Zephaniah 2:12-14 . . . . .	40
Zephaniah 2:15 . . . . .	43
Zephaniah 03 General Notes . . . . .	45
Zephaniah 3:1-2 . . . . .	46
Zephaniah 3:3-4 . . . . .	48
Zephaniah 3:5 . . . . .	50
Zephaniah 3:6-7 . . . . .	52
Zephaniah 3:8 . . . . .	54
Zephaniah 3:9-11 . . . . .	56
Zephaniah 3:12-13 . . . . .	58
Zephaniah 3:14-16 . . . . .	60
Zephaniah 3:17-18 . . . . .	62
Zephaniah 3:19-20 . . . . .	64
<b>translationQuestions</b> . . . . .	<b>66</b>
Zephaniah 1 . . . . .	66
Zephaniah 2 . . . . .	68
Zephaniah 3 . . . . .	69
<b>translationWords</b> . . . . .	<b>70</b>
Absalom . . . . .	71
Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites . . . . .	72
anger, angered, angry . . . . .	73
arrogant, arrogantly, arrogance . . . . .	74
Ashdod, Azotus . . . . .	75
Ashkelon . . . . .	76

*Table of Contents*

---

Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrians, Assyrian Empire . . . . .	77
Baal . . . . .	78
Benaiah . . . . .	80
blood . . . . .	81
Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites . . . . .	83
cedar, cedars, cedarwood . . . . .	85
chaff . . . . .	86
Christ, Messiah . . . . .	87
column, columns, pillar, pillars . . . . .	89
corrupt, corrupts, corrupted, corrupting, corruption, corruptly, incorruptibility . . . . .	90
crime, crimes, criminal, criminals . . . . .	91
Cush . . . . .	92
cut off, cuts off, cutting off . . . . .	93
darkness . . . . .	94
David . . . . .	96
day of the Lord, day of Yahweh . . . . .	98
deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceptive . . . . .	100
decree, decrees, decreed . . . . .	102
defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled . . . . .	103
desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses . . . . .	105
devastate, devastated, devastating, devastation, devastations . . . . .	106
devour, devours, devoured, devouring . . . . .	107
dung, manure . . . . .	108
earth, earthen, earthly . . . . .	109
Ekron, Ekronites . . . . .	111
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever . . . . .	112
Ethiopia, Ethiopian . . . . .	114
evil, wicked, wickedness . . . . .	115
ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins . . . . .	117
exult, exults, exulting, exultant . . . . .	119
fear, fears, afraid . . . . .	120
feast, feasts, feasting . . . . .	122
fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots . . . . .	123
flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds . . . . .	124
Gaza . . . . .	125
God . . . . .	126
god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry . . . . .	129
gold, golden . . . . .	131
Gomorrah . . . . .	132
hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of . . . . .	133
heart, hearts . . . . .	135

---

heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly . . . . .	137
Hezekiah . . . . .	139
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred . . . . .	140
humble, humbles, humbled, humility . . . . .	142
Israel, Israelites . . . . .	143
Jerusalem . . . . .	145
Josiah . . . . .	147
joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, re- joices, rejoiced, rejoicing . . . . .	148
Judah . . . . .	150
judge, judges, judgment, judgments . . . . .	151
just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification . . . . .	153
Kerethites . . . . .	156
king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly . . . . .	157
kingdom, kingdoms . . . . .	159
lamp, lamps . . . . .	161
law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh . . . . .	162
life, live, lived, lives, living, alive . . . . .	164
light, lights, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten, enlightened . . . . .	166
lions, lion, lioness, lionesses . . . . .	168
Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God . . . . .	169
lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs . . . . .	171
love, loves, loving, loved . . . . .	174
lowly, lowliest, lowliness . . . . .	177
might, mighty, mightier, mightily . . . . .	178
Moab, Moabite, Moabites . . . . .	180
mock, mocks, mocked, mocking, mocker, mockers, mockery, ridicule, ridiculed, scoff at, scoffed at . . . . .	181
name, names, named . . . . .	183
nation, nations . . . . .	185
Nineveh, Ninevite . . . . .	187
Philistines . . . . .	188
priest, priests, priesthood . . . . .	189
prince, princes, princess, princesses . . . . .	191
profane, profaned, profaning . . . . .	193
prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess . . . . .	194
proud, proudly, pride, prideful . . . . .	196
punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished . . . . .	198
pure, purify, purification . . . . .	200
rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness . . . . .	202
refuge, refugee, refugees, shelter, shelters, sheltered, sheltering . . . . .	204
remnant . . . . .	206
restore, restores, restored, restoration . . . . .	207

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness . . . . .	208
ruin, ruins, ruined . . . . .	211
sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings . . . . .	212
save, saves, saved, safe, salvation . . . . .	214
set apart . . . . .	216
shame, shames, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, ashamed, unashamed . . . . .	217
shepherd, shepherds, shepherded, shepherding . . . . .	218
silver . . . . .	220
sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning . . . . .	221
Sodom . . . . .	224
stronghold, strongholds, fortifications, fortified, fortress, fortresses . . . . .	225
sword, swords, swordsmen . . . . .	226
terror, terrorize, terrorized, terrors, terrify, terrified, terrifying . . . . .	228
tongue, tongues . . . . .	229
trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters . . . . .	231
trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness . . . . .	232
vineyard, vineyards . . . . .	234
voice, voices . . . . .	235
woe . . . . .	236
wolf, wolves, wild dogs . . . . .	238
word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures . . . . .	239
worship . . . . .	241
wrath, fury . . . . .	243
wrong, wrongs, wronged, wrongly, wrongfully, wrongdoer, wrongdoing, mistreat, mis- treated, hurt, hurts, hurting, hurtful . . . . .	244
Yahweh . . . . .	245
Zephaniah . . . . .	248
Zion, Mount Zion . . . . .	249
<b>translationAcademy . . . . .</b>	<b>250</b>
Abstract Nouns . . . . .	250
Active or Passive . . . . .	253
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information . . . . .	256
Direct and Indirect Quotations . . . . .	260
Doublet . . . . .	262
Ellipsis . . . . .	264
First, Second, or Third Person . . . . .	266
How to Translate Names . . . . .	268
Hyperbole and Generalization . . . . .	272
Idiom . . . . .	276
Litotes . . . . .	279
Merism . . . . .	281

Metaphor . . . . .	283
Metonymy . . . . .	290
Parallelism . . . . .	292
Personification . . . . .	295
Simile . . . . .	297
Synecdoche . . . . .	300

## translationNotes

### Introduction to Zephaniah

#### Part 1: General Introduction

##### Outline of the Book of Zephaniah

1. Zephaniah introduces this book (1:1)
2. Yahweh will punish Judah and the nations (1:2–18)
3. Yahweh calls Judah to repent (2:1–3)
4. Yahweh will judge the nations (2:4–15)
  - Philistia (2:4–7)
  - Moab and Ammon (2:8–11)
  - Egypt (2:12)
  - Assyria (2:13–15)
5. Yahweh will judge Jerusalem (3:1–8)
6. Yahweh will purify, restore, gather, and bless his people (3:9–20)

##### What is the Book of Zephaniah about?

Zechariah warned Judah and other nations that Yahweh was about to punish them. He also prophesied about how Yahweh would restore Judah. (See: [day of the Lord, day of Yahweh](#))

##### How should the title of this book be translated?

The traditional name of this book is “The Book of Zephaniah” or just “Zephaniah.” Translators may decide to call it “The Sayings of Zephaniah.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

##### Who wrote the Book of Zephaniah?

Zephaniah wrote this book. But four different Old Testament people have the name Zephaniah. This Zephaniah was probably the great-grandson of King Hezekiah and a cousin to King Josiah. Zephaniah lived in the city of Jerusalem. He began to prophesy about seventy years after the prophets Isaiah and Micah. Zephaniah spoke Yahweh’s messages during the reign of King Josiah (about 640–621 B.C.), and just before Jeremiah began to prophesy.

#### Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

##### Were the people of Judah faithful to Yahweh at the time Zephaniah started to prophesy?

Manasseh, the grandfather of Josiah, had been one of the worst kings of Judah. He led the people to worship other gods. After his death, his son Amon ruled for only two years before he was killed.



Amon's son Josiah became king when he was eight years old. Josiah learned to worship and honor Yahweh. Zephaniah likely began his work after Josiah had destroyed most of the idols and shrines of false gods in Judah. (See: [god](#), [false god](#), [gods](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idols](#), [idolater](#), [idolaters](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#))

**What country is coming to invade Judah?**

Zephaniah often said a foreign nation would invade the kingdom of Judah. Zephaniah probably meant Babylonia. However, the Book of Zephaniah never names this nation.

## **Zephaniah 01 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULB does this with the poetic song in 1:2-18.

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Prophecy**

In this chapter, it is unclear whether these prophecies concern the fall of Jerusalem, the coming of the Messiah or the day of the Lord. It is possible that the prophecies reference more than one period of time. (See: [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#) and [day of the Lord](#), [day of Yahweh](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Zephaniah 01:01 Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah intro](#)

## Zephaniah 1:1-3

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh's message came to Zephaniah son of Cushi, the grandson of Gedaliah, and the great-grandson of Amariah, whose father was King Hezekiah. Yahweh gave this message during the time when King Amon's son Josiah was the king of Judah.

<sup>2</sup> Yahweh said,

"I will sweep away everything that is on the earth.

<sup>3</sup> I will sweep away people and animals.

I will sweep away birds and fish.

I will get rid of wicked people;

so that there will be no more wicked people on the earth."

### ULB:

<sup>1</sup> This is the word of Yahweh that came to Zephaniah son of Cushi son of Gedaliah son of Amariah son of Hezekiah, in the days of Josiah son of Amon, king of Judah.

<sup>2</sup> "I will utterly destroy everything from off the surface of the earth—this is Yahweh's declaration.

<sup>3</sup> I will destroy man and beast; I will destroy the birds of the heavens and the fish of the sea, the ruins along with the wicked.

For I will cut off man from the surface of the earth—this is Yahweh's declaration.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Verses 1:2-18 refer to Yahweh's judgment. Verses 1:2-3 describe Yahweh's final judgment of every sinner in the future.

#### the word of Yahweh that came

This idiom is used to introduce a special message from God. AT: "Yahweh gave a message" or "Yahweh spoke this message" (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the [translationWord](#) page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

**son of Gedaliah son of Amariah son of Hezekiah**

This is a list of Zephaniah's ancestors. These usages of "son of" are the broader sense of "descendant of." Here "Hezekiah" refers to King Hezekiah. These things can be made explicit. AT: "the grandson of Gedaliah, and the great-grandson of Amariah, whose father was King Hezekiah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**I will utterly destroy everything from off the surface of the earth ... I will cut off man from the surface of the earth**

The words "everything" and "will cut off man" are deliberate exaggerations by Yahweh to express his anger at the people's sin. Yahweh will destroy neither sinners who repent nor all living things nor. (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

**destroy everything from off the surface of the earth**

"destroy everything that is on the entire earth"

**this is Yahweh's declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. AT: "this is what Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**man and beast**

"people and animals"

**the ruins**

Possible meanings are 1) the piles of rubble that will remain after the judgment or 2) the idols that Yahweh destroyed.

**cut off**

Destroying is spoken of as if it were cutting something off from what it was a part of. AT: "destroy" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures
- Yahweh
- Zephaniah

- [Hezekiah](#)
- [Josiah](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Zephaniah](#)
- [Zephaniah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 1 translationQuestions](#)

**Zephaniah 1:4-6****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> "These are some of the things that I will do:

I will punish the people who live in Jerusalem and other places in Judah,  
and destroy everything that has been used in the worship of Baal and  
and cause people to no longer remember the names of the pagan priests  
or the other priests who have turned away from me.

<sup>5</sup> I will get rid of those who go up on the roofs of their houses and worship the sun, moon, and stars,

and those who claim to worship me but also swear using the name of their king.

<sup>6</sup> Finally, I will get rid of all those who previously worshiped me but no longer do;  
those who no longer seek my help or request me to tell them what they should do."

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> I will reach out with my hand over Judah and all the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

I will cut off every remnant of Baal from this place and the names of the idolatrous people among the priests,

<sup>5</sup> the people who on the housetops worship the heavenly bodies,

and the people who worship and swear to Yahweh but who also swear by their king. <sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>6</sup> I will also cut off those who have turned away from following Yahweh, those who neither seek Yahweh nor ask for his guidance."

---

1:5 <sup>[1]</sup>The Hebrew text has *by their king* , but some modern versions read *by Milcom* , the name of a pagan god that many people worshiped.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Verses 1:2-18 refer to Yahweh's judgment. Verses 1:4-16 describe Yahweh's judgment on the people of Judah.

**I will reach out with my hand over Judah**

This is an idiom that means God will punish. AT: “I will punish Judah” (See: [Idiom](#))

**I will cut off every remnant ... the names of the idolatrous people among the priests ... the people who on the housetops ... the people who worship and swear**

The verb “cut off” applies to each of these phrases, but has been used only once to avoid repetition. AT: “I will cut off every remnant ... I will cut off the names of the idolatrous people among the priests ... I will cut off the people who on the housetops ... I will cut off the people who worship and swear” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**cut off**

Destroying is spoken of as if it were cutting something off from what it was a part of. See how you translated this in [Zephaniah 1:3](#). AT: “destroy” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**cut off ... the names of the idolatrous people among the priests**

Here “cut off ... the names” is an idiom that means to cause people to forget them. AT: “cause everyone ... to forget the priests who are idolatrous” (See: [Idiom](#))

**by their king**

See the footnote about the possible rendering of this as “by Milcom.”

**neither seek Yahweh nor ask for his guidance**

Seeking Yahweh represents either 1) asking God for help or 2) thinking about God and obeying him. AT: “do not think about Yahweh or ask him to guide them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [Judah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [cut off, cuts off, cutting off](#)
- [remnant](#)
- [Baal](#)
- [god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Zephaniah](#)
- [Zephaniah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 1 translationQuestions](#)



**Zephaniah 1:7-9****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> Be silent in front of Yahweh the Lord,  
because it will soon be the time when Yahweh will judge and punish people.

Yahweh has prepared himself to get rid of the people of Judah;  
they will be like animals that are set apart to be slaughtered for sacrifices,  
and he has chosen their enemies to be the ones who will get rid of them.

<sup>8</sup> Yahweh says, "On that day when I will get rid of the people of Judah,  
I will punish their officials and the king's sons,  
and all those who worship foreign gods—

<sup>9</sup> including those who show that they revere their god Dagan by avoiding stepping on the threshold of his temple,  
and those who do violent things and tell lies in the temples of their gods."

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> Be silent before the Lord Yahweh! For the day of Yahweh is near;  
Yahweh has prepared the sacrifice and set apart his guests.

<sup>8</sup> "It will come about on the day of Yahweh's sacrifice,  
that I will punish the princes and the king's sons,  
and everyone dressed in foreign clothes.

<sup>9</sup> On that day I will punish all those who leap over the threshold,  
those who fill their master's house with violence and deceit.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Verses 1:2-18 refer to Yahweh's judgment. Verses 1:4-16 describe Yahweh's judgment on the people of Judah.

**General Information:**

In verses 1:8-13, Yahweh is speaking. He alternates between using first person and speaking about himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**Be silent**

This is an idiom. Here silence is meant to signal shock and amazement. AT: “Be shocked” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Yahweh has prepared the sacrifice and set apart his guests**

The people of Judah are spoken of as Yahweh’s sacrifice, and the enemy nations are spoken of as his guests who would eat the sacrifice. This can be stated explicitly. AT: “Yahweh has prepared the people of Judah as a sacrifice, and invited the enemy nations as his guests” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**set apart his guests**

Here “set apart” is an idiom that means he has invited them. (See: [Idiom](#))

**It will come about**

This phrase is used to mark the point at which Yahweh’s judgment of Judah will begin.

**everyone dressed in foreign clothes**

This phrase suggests that the Israelites wore clothes similar to the foreigners to show sympathy to their customs and to the worship of their foreign gods. AT: “everyone who worships foreign gods” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**On that day**

“On the day of Yahweh”

**all those who leap over the threshold**

Possible meanings are 1) this is a reference to people who did not step on thresholds as part of their worship of a god called Dagan or 2) people who leapt up onto platforms to worship pagan idols or 3) royal officials who climbed the steps to the throne.

**fill their master’s house with violence and deceit**

The abstract nouns “violence” and “deceit” can be stated as actions. AT: “those who do violent things and tell lies in the temples of their gods”

**translationWords**

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- day of the Lord, day of Yahweh
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- set apart
- punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished
- prince, princes, princess, princesses
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs
- deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceptive

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Zephaniah](#)
- [Zephaniah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 1 translationQuestions](#)

## Zephaniah 1:10-11

### UDB:

<sup>10</sup> Yahweh also says,

”On that day, people will cry out at the Fish Gate of Jerusalem.

People will wail in the Second Quarter of the city,

and people will hear a loud crash of buildings collapsing in the hills.

<sup>11</sup> All you people who live in the market area of Jerusalem should wail,

because all those who sell goods for money will be slaughtered.

### ULB:

<sup>10</sup> So it will be on that day—this is Yahweh’s declaration—

that a cry of distress will come from the Fish Gate, wailing from the Second District,

and a great crashing sound from the hills.

<sup>11</sup> Wail, inhabitants of the Market District,

for all the merchants will be ruined; all those who weigh out silver will be cut off.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Verses 1:2-18 refer to Yahweh’s judgment. Verses 1:4-16 describe Yahweh’s judgment on the people of Judah.

#### General Information:

In verses 1:8-13, Yahweh is speaking. He alternates between using first person and speaking about himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

#### on that day

“on the day of Yahweh.” See how you translated this phrase in [Zephaniah 1:9](#).

#### Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. AT: “what Yahweh has declared” or “what Yahweh has solemnly said” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**Fish Gate**

The Fish Gate was one of the gates in the Jerusalem city wall.

**wailing from the Second District**

“Mourn loudly from the Second District.” The Second District was a newer part of Jerusalem.

**a great crashing sound**

This refers to the sound of buildings collapsing. This can be stated explicitly. AT: “a loud sound of buildings collapsing” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**from the hills**

This refers to the hills surrounding Jerusalem.

**for all the merchants will be ruined; all those who weigh out silver will be cut off**

These two phrases refer to the same people and are used to emphasize that business will be destroyed. AT: “for those who buy and sell goods will be killed” (See: [Parallelism](#))

**those who weigh out silver**

This refers to merchants. Before coins were used, people weighed out silver or gold as payment for things they bought.

**cut off**

Destroying is spoken of as if it were cutting something off from what it was a part of. See how you translated this in [Zephaniah 1:3](#). AT: “destroyed” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [silver](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Zephaniah](#)
- [Zephaniah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 1 translationQuestions](#)

**Zephaniah 1:12-13****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> It will be as though I will light lanterns to search in dark places in Jerusalem  
for those who have become very satisfied with their behavior and complacent about their  
sins.

They think that I, Yahweh, will do neither good nor bad things, as if I do not even exist!

<sup>13</sup> So I have decided that armies will come and carry off their valuable possessions,  
after destroying their houses.

The people will build new homes,

but they will not live in them;

they will plant vineyards again,

but they will never drink any wine made from grapes that grow.”

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> It will come about at that time that

I will search Jerusalem with lamps and punish the men  
who have settled into their wine and say in their heart,  
‘Yahweh will not do anything, either good or evil.’

<sup>13</sup> Their wealth will become plunder, and their houses will be an abandoned devastation!  
They will build houses but not live in them, and plant vineyards but not drink their wine.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Verses 1:2-18 refer to Yahweh’s judgment. Verses 1:4-16 describe Yahweh’s judgment on the people of Judah.

**General Information:**

In verses 1:8-13, Yahweh is speaking. He alternates between using first person and speaking about himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**It will come about at that time**

This phrase is used to mark the time when Jerusalem has been destroyed by the enemies.

**I will search Jerusalem with lamps**

Yahweh speaks of knowing about all people of Jerusalem as if he had searched for them with lamps. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**settled into their wine**

They feel safe from trouble. (See: [Idiom](#))

**say in their heart, 'Yahweh will not do anything, either good or evil.'**

This direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. AT: "say in their heart that Yahweh will not do anything, either good or evil.

**say in their heart**

This idiom means they think to themselves. (See: [Idiom](#))

**Yahweh will not do anything, either good or evil**

Here "good and evil" is a merism that includes everything in between. AT: "Yahweh will not do anything at all" (See: [Merism](#))

**an abandoned devastation**

"destroyed and abandoned"

**translationWords**

- [lamp, lamps](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [devastate, devastated, devastating, devastation, devastations](#)
- [vineyard, vineyards](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Zephaniah](#)
- [Zephaniah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 1 translationQuestions](#)

**Zephaniah 1:14-16****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> It will soon be the day when Yahweh will punish people.

It will be here quickly.

It will be a time when even brave soldiers will cry loudly.

<sup>15</sup> It will be a time when God shows that he is very angry,  
a time when people experience much distress and trouble.

It will be a time when many things are ruined, destroyed, and when everyone goes away.

It will be a time when it is very gloomy and dark,  
when the clouds are very black.

<sup>16</sup> It will be a time when soldiers will blow trumpets to call other soldiers to battle.

Your enemies will tear down the walls around your cities  
and the high towers at the corners of those walls.

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> The great day of Yahweh is near, near and hurrying quickly!

The sound of the day of Yahweh will be that of a warrior crying bitterly!

<sup>15</sup> That day will be a day of fury, a day of distress and anguish,  
a day of storm and devastation, a day of darkness and gloom,  
a day of clouds and thick darkness.

<sup>16</sup> It will be a day of trumpets and alarms  
against the fortified cities and the high battlements.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Verses 1:2-18 refer to Yahweh's judgment. Verses 1:4-16 describe Yahweh's judgment on the people of Judah.

**near, near and hurrying quickly**

The repetition of the word "near," along with the phrase "hurrying quickly," emphasize that the day when Yahweh judges the people will soon happen. AT: "close and will be here soon" (See: **Doublet**)



**the day of Yahweh**

See how you translated this phrase in [Zephaniah 1:7](#).

**a warrior crying bitterly**

Possible meanings are 1) a soldier crying in despair or 2) a soldier's battle cry.

**That day ... a day**

These phrases refer back to the "day of Yahweh" in verse 14.

**That day will be a day of fury ... battlements**

Verses 15-16 have multiple figures of speech that together emphasize the destructive nature of this final judgment by God.

**a day of distress and anguish**

The words "distress" and "anguish" mean about the same thing and emphasize the intensity of the people's distress. AT: "a day when people feel terrible distress" (See: [Doublet](#))

**a day of storm and devastation**

Here the word "storm" refers to divine judgment. The word "devastation" describes the effects of that judgment. AT: "a day of devastating storms" or "a day of devastating judgment" (See: [Doublet](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**a day of darkness and gloom**

The words "darkness" and "gloom" share similar meanings and emphasize the intensity of darkness. Both words refer to a time of disaster or divine judgment. AT: "a day that is full of darkness" or "a day of terrible judgment" (See: [Doublet](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**a day of clouds and thick darkness**

This phrase means the same thing as, and intensifies, the idea of the previous phrase. Like that phrase, both "clouds" and "thick darkness" refer to divine judgment. AT: "a day full of dark storm clouds" (See: [Doublet](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**a day of trumpets and alarms**

The words "trumpets" and "alarms" mean basically the same thing here. Both are means to call soldiers to prepare for battle. AT: "a day when people sound the alarm for battle" (See: [Doublet](#))

### **fortified cities and the high battlements**

These two phrases both refer to military strongholds. AT: “well fortified cities” (See: [Doublet](#))

### **translationWords**

- [day of the Lord, day of Yahweh](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters](#)

### **Links:**

- [Introduction to Zephaniah](#)
- [Zephaniah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 1 translationQuestions](#)

**Zephaniah 1:17-18****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> Because you sinned against Yahweh,  
 he will cause you to experience great distress;  
 you will walk around groping as blind people do.

Your blood will flow from your bodies like falling soil,  
 and your corpses will lie on the ground and rot.

<sup>18</sup> At the time that Yahweh shows that he is very angry with you,  
 you will not be able to save yourselves  
 by giving silver or gold to your enemies.

Because Yahweh is very jealous,

he will send a fire to burn up the entire world,

and he will completely get rid, in a most terrifying way, of all the wicked people who live on the earth.

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> For I will bring distress upon mankind, so that they will walk about like blind men  
 since they have sinned against Yahweh.

Their blood will be poured out like dust, and their inner parts like dung.

<sup>18</sup> Neither their silver nor their gold will be able to save them  
 on the day of Yahweh's fury. In the fire of his jealousy the whole earth will be consumed,  
 for he will bring a complete, a terrible end of all the inhabitants of the earth."

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Verses 1:2-18 refer to Yahweh's judgment. Verses 1:17-18 describe Yahweh's final judgment of every sinner in the future.

**they will walk about like blind men**

The result of Yahweh's judgment is that people will be so confused and dazed when they walk about that people will think they are blind. AT: "they will walk around as confused and dazed as blind men" (See: [Simile](#))

**Their blood will be poured out like dust**

Their blood that is shed will be as worthless as dust. This can be stated in active form. AT: “Their enemies will pour out their blood and consider it to be worthless” (See: [Simile](#))

**their inner parts like dung**

The verb “poured out” is understood here. This can be stated in active form. AT: “their enemies will cut open their bodies and leave them to rot like dung” (See: [Simile](#))

**the fire of his jealousy**

Here “fire” refers to the intensity of Yahweh’s anger. This can be stated as a simile. AT: “his jealousy is as intense as a fire” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Simile](#))

**all the inhabitants of the earth**

It is understood that this refers to the wicked people. This can be stated explicitly. AT: “all the wicked people who live on the earth” (See: [Assumed Knowledge](#) and [Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [blood](#)
- [dung, manure](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [save, saves, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [terror, terrorize, terrorized, terrors, terrify, terrified, terrifying](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Zephaniah](#)
- [Zephaniah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 1 translationQuestions](#)

## Zephaniah 02 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULB does this with the poetic song in 2:1-9, 12-15.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Prophecy

In this chapter, because the prophesied destruction is so complete, it is unclear whether these prophecies concern the time near the fall of Jerusalem or the day of the Lord. It is possible that the prophecies reference more than one period of time. (See: [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#) and [day of the Lord](#), [day of Yahweh](#))

#### Links:

- [Zephaniah 02:01 Notes](#)

**Zephaniah 2:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> You people of Judah who ought to be ashamed,  
gather together to ask for God to be merciful to you.

<sup>2</sup> Yahweh is very angry with you,  
so gather together now,  
before he punishes you—before he punishes you  
and sweeps you away as the wind blows away the chaff.

<sup>3</sup> All you people in Judah who are humble,  
worship Yahweh and obey what he has commanded.

Try to do what is right  
and to be humble.

If you do that, perhaps Yahweh will protect you  
on the day when he punishes people.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Rally yourselves together and gather, unashamed nation—

<sup>2</sup> before the decree takes effect and that day passes like the chaff,  
before the fierce anger of Yahweh's wrath comes upon you, before the day of the wrath of  
Yahweh comes upon you.

<sup>3</sup> Seek Yahweh, all you humble people on earth who obey his decrees!

Seek righteousness. Seek humility,  
and perhaps you will be protected in the day of Yahweh's wrath.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

In 2:1-3, Yahweh continues to speak to Judah, and tells them to repent.

**Rally yourselves together and gather**

These two phrases mean the same thing. Together they intensify the command for the people to gather together in order to repent of their sins. AT: "Gather yourselves together" (See: **Doublet**)

**unashamed nation**

The nation is not sorry for their sins.

**before the decree takes effect**

This phrase refers to the punishment that will happen as a result of Yahweh's decree. AT: "before Yahweh punishes you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**that day ... the day of the wrath of Yahweh ... the day of Yahweh's wrath**

These phrases all refer to the "day of Yahweh." Translate these phrases as you did similar phrases in [Zephaniah 1:7-9](#).

**that day passes like the chaff**

The chaff is the insignificant part of the plant that the wind blows away. In a similar way, the day of judgment will pass quickly. AT: "that day passes as quickly as chaff blown by the wind" (See: [Simile](#))

**before the fierce anger of Yahweh's wrath comes upon you, before the day of the wrath of Yahweh comes upon you**

The prophet repeats the same phrase almost exactly in order to emphasize how terrible Yahweh's judgment will be and the urgency with which the people must repent. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**Yahweh's wrath**

This stands for God's intent to punish. AT: "Yahweh's punishment" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Seek Yahweh**

Seeking Yahweh represents either 1) asking God for help or 2) thinking about God and obeying him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Seek righteousness. Seek humility**

The abstract nouns "righteousness" and "humility" can be stated as actions. AT: "Try to do what is right and to be humble" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**you will be protected in the day of Yahweh's wrath**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Yahweh will protect you in the day of his wrath" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- nation, nations
- decree, decrees, decreed
- chaff
- anger, angered, angry
- Yahweh
- wrath, fury
- day of the Lord, day of Yahweh
- humble, humbles, humbled, humility
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Zephaniah](#)
- [Zephaniah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 2 translationQuestions](#)



**Zephaniah 2:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> When Yahweh punishes Philistia,

the cities of Gaza and Ashkelon will lose all their inhabitants.

Ashdod will be attacked and the people will be driven away at noon, when they are resting.

The people of the city of Ekron will also be driven out.

<sup>5</sup> And terrible things will happen to you people of Philistia who live near the sea,

because Yahweh has said he will punish you, also.

He will get rid of all of you; not one of you will survive!

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> For Gaza will be abandoned, and Ashkelon will turn into a devastation.

They will drive out Ashdod at noon, and they will uproot Ekron!

<sup>5</sup> Woe to the inhabitants of the seacoast, the nation of the Kerethites! Yahweh has spoken against you,

Canaan, land of the Philistines. I will destroy you until no inhabitant remains.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

In 2:4-15, Yahweh announces his judgment on the nations that surround Judah.

**Gaza ... Ashkelon ... Ashdod ... Ekron**

These were the four major Philistine cities of that day.

**will be abandoned ... will turn into a devastation**

These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize the complete destruction of these cities. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**They will drive out Ashdod at noon**

Here “They” refers to the enemies of the Philistines. Possible meanings for “at noon” are 1) the enemies will defeat Ashdod before noon or 2) the enemies will attack Ashdod at noon while the people are resting and unaware.

**they will uproot Ekron**

The defeat of Ekron is spoken of as if it was a tree that was pulled from the ground and thrown away. AT: “they will take the people of Ekron away as if uprooting a tree” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the inhabitants of the seacoast, the nation of the Kerethites**

The first phrase explains where the Kerethites lived.

**Canaan, land of the Philistines**

The Philistines were one of several people groups who lived in Canaan.

**until no inhabitant remains**

“until no one is left.” This can be stated in positive form. AT: “until every inhabitant is dead”

**translationWords**

- [Gaza](#)
- [Ashkelon](#)
- [devastate, devastated, devastating, devastation, devastations](#)
- [Ashdod, Azotus](#)
- [Ekron, Ekronites](#)
- [woe](#)
- [Kerethites](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites](#)
- [Philistines](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Zephaniah](#)
- [Zephaniah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 2 translationQuestions](#)

**Zephaniah 2:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> The land of Philistia near the sea will become a pasture,  
a place for shepherds and their sheep pens.

<sup>7</sup> The people of Judah who survive will possess that land.  
At night they will sleep in the deserted houses in Ashkelon.  
Yahweh will take care of them;  
he will enable them to prosper again.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> So the seacoast will become pastures for shepherds and for sheep pens.

<sup>7</sup> The coastal region will belong to the remnant of the house of Judah,  
who will shepherd their flocks there. Their people will lie down in the evening in the houses of  
Ashkelon,  
for Yahweh their God will care for them and restore their fortunes.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

In 2:4-15, Yahweh announces his judgment on the nations that surround Judah.

**So the seacoast will become pastures for shepherds and for sheep pens**

This probably means that the Philistine cities are gone, and only open fields remain. However, the Hebrew meaning is unclear and is sometimes translated differently by modern versions.

**sheep pens**

A sheep pen is a small area surrounded by a fence to keep the sheep together.

**Their people**

“The people of Judah”

**lie down**

“lie down to sleep”

### translationWords

- shepherd, shepherds, shepherded, shepherding
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- remnant
- Judah
- flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds
- God
- restore, restores, restored, restoration

### Links:

- [Introduction to Zephaniah](#)
- [Zephaniah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 2 translationQuestions](#)

**Zephaniah 2:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, the God of the Israelites, says this:

”I have heard the people of Moab and Ammon  
insult my people and plan to conquer my people’s country.

<sup>9</sup> So now, as surely as I live, I will destroy Moab and Ammon  
as I destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah.

Their land will be a place where there are nettles and salt pits;  
it will be ruined forever, with none of their people living there!

My people who survive will take away all their valuable possessions  
and also occupy their land.”

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> ”I have heard the taunts of Moab and the reviling of the people of Ammon  
when they taunted my people and violated their borders.

<sup>9</sup> Therefore, as I live—this is the declaration of Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel—  
Moab will become like Sodom, and the people of Ammon like Gomorrah;  
a place of nettles and a salt pit, deserted forever.

But the remnant of my people will plunder them, and the remainder of my nation will take  
possession of them.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

In 2:4-15, Yahweh announces his judgment on the nations that surround Judah.

**the taunts ... the reviling**

“the taunts ... the insults.” These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize that both Moab  
and Ammon have insulted Yahweh. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**violated their borders**

This refers to crossing over into Judah’s territory in order to attack them.

**as I live**

“as surely as I am alive.” Yahweh uses this expression to show that what he says next is certainly true. This is a way of making a solemn promise. AT: “I solemnly swear” (See: [Idiom](#))

**this is the declaration of Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. AT: “this is what Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, has declared” or “this is what I, Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**like Sodom ... like Gomorrah**

These two cities were so wicked that God completely destroyed them with fire from heaven. These similes therefore refer to complete destruction. This can be stated explicitly. AT: “completely destroyed like Sodom ... like Gomorrah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Simile](#))

**a place of nettles and a salt pit**

“a place with thorns and a salt pit.” This describes a barren, useless land.

**the remnant of my people ... the remainder of my nation**

These two phrases mean the same thing and refer to the Israelites that survived Yahweh’s punishment. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**translationWords**

- [Moab, Moabite, Moabites](#)
- [Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Sodom](#)
- [Gomorrah](#)
- [eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever](#)
- [remnant](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Zephaniah](#)
- [Zephaniah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 2 translationQuestions](#)

**Zephaniah 2:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> The people of Moab and Ammon will get what they deserve for being proud,  
because they made fun of the people who belong to Yahweh, commander of the angel armies.

<sup>11</sup> Yahweh will cause them to be terrified  
when he destroys all the gods of their countries.

Then people from every nation will worship Yahweh,  
each in his own country.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> This will happen to Moab and Ammon because of their pride, since they taunted and mocked the people of Yahweh of hosts. <sup>11</sup> Then they will fear Yahweh, for he will taunt all the gods of the earth. Everyone will worship him, everyone from his own place, from every seashore.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

In 2:4-15, Yahweh announces his judgment on the nations that surround Judah.

**they taunted and mocked the people of Yahweh of hosts ... he will taunt all the gods of the earth**

Yahweh is speaking with irony. He will taunt the worthless gods in the same way that the people who served those gods had taunted Yahweh's people.

**translationWords**

- proud, proudly, pride, prideful
- mock, mocks, mocked, mocking, mocker, mockers, mockery, ridicule, ridiculed, scoff at, scoffed at
- fear, fears, afraid
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- earth, earthen, earthly
- worship

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Zephaniah](#)
- [Zephaniah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 2 translationQuestions](#)



**Zephaniah 2:12-14****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> Yahweh says that he will also slaughter the people of Ethiopia.

<sup>13</sup> Yahweh will punish and destroy Assyria,  
that land northeast of us, and cause its capital Nineveh  
to become ruined and deserted, and as dry as the desert.

<sup>14</sup> Flocks of sheep and herds of cattle and many kinds of wild animals will lie down there.  
Owls and crows will sit on the columns of the destroyed buildings,  
and they will hoot through the windows.

There will be rubble in the doorways,  
and the valuable cedar beams in the roofs of the buildings will become visible.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> You Cushites also will be pierced by my sword,

<sup>13</sup> and God's hand will attack the north and destroy Assyria,  
so that Nineveh will become an abandoned devastation, as dry as the desert.

<sup>14</sup> Then herds will lie down there, every animal of the nations,  
both the desert owl and the screech owl will rest in the top of her columns.

A call will sing out from the windows; rubble will be in the doorways; her carved cedar beams will be exposed.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

In 2:4-15, Yahweh announces his judgment on the nations that surround Judah.

**You Cushites also will be pierced by my sword**

Here "pieced by my sword" is a metonym for being killed in battle. AT: "I will kill you people of Cush in battle" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**God's hand**

Here "hand" refers to power. AT: "God's power" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**an abandoned devastation**

The abstract noun “devastation” can be stated as an action. AT: “ruined and deserted” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**as dry as the desert**

This means it will be so dry that nothing will grow there. (See: [Simile](#))

**every animal of the nations**

“every kind of animal”

**the screech owl**

This term is uncertain. Some versions translate it as “hedgehog.”

**in the top of her columns**

When buildings were destroyed and fell down, the columns used for decoration and support would often remain standing.

**A call will sing out from the windows**

“A call will be heard from the windows”

**beams**

Beams are long and thick pieces of wood that are used to keep a building stable.

**translationWords**

- [Cush](#)
- [sword, swords, swordsmen](#)
- [hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrians, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Nineveh, Ninevite](#)
- [devastate, devastated, devastating, devastation, devastations](#)
- [desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses](#)
- [column, columns, pillar, pillars](#)
- [cedar, cedars, cedarwood](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Zephaniah](#)
- [Zephaniah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 2 translationQuestions](#)

## Zephaniah 2:15

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> The people of Nineveh used to be happy and proud,  
thinking that they were very safe.  
They were always saying,  
"Our city is the greatest city;  
there is no city as great as ours!"  
But now it will become a horrible place to see,  
a place where wild animals make their dens.  
And everyone who passes by there will hiss and scorn that city,  
and shake their fists to show that they detest that city very much.

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> This is the exultant city that lived without fear,  
that said in her heart, "I am, and nothing is my equal."  
How she has become a horror, a place for beasts to lie down in.  
Everyone that passes by her will hiss and shake his fist at her.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

In 2:4-15, Yahweh announces his judgment on the nations that surround Judah.

#### the exultant city

"the city that is proud of itself." This refers to the city of Nineveh, about whom Yahweh began to speak in [Zephaniah 2:13](#).

#### said in her heart

This idiom means "said to herself" or "she thought." The city is spoken of as if it were a person that could speak. It represents the people who live in that city. (See: [Idiom](#) and [Personification](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**I am, and nothing is my equal**

It may be necessary to supply an object for “I am.” AT: “I am the greatest city, and no other city is equal to me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**a horror**

“a horrible place to see”

**hiss and shake his fist**

A hiss is an angry sound. This phrase indicates extreme anger of the people toward Nineveh.

**translationWords**

- [exult, exults, exulting, exultant](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Zephaniah](#)
- [Zephaniah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 2 translationQuestions](#)

## **Zephaniah 03 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULB does this with the poetic song in 3:1-20.

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Prophecy**

In this chapter, because the prophesied destruction is so complete, it is unclear whether these prophecies concern the time near the fall of Jerusalem or the day of the Lord. It is possible that the prophecies reference more than one period of time. (See: [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [day of the Lord](#), [day of Yahweh](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Zephaniah 03:01 Notes](#)

## Zephaniah 3:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> Terrible things will happen to Jerusalem,  
 the city whose people have rebelled against Yahweh  
 and who have become unacceptable to him because of the sins that they have committed.  
 They act violently toward others and they oppress other people.

<sup>2</sup> The people there pay no attention to the prophets whom Yahweh has sent to tell them the  
 wrong things that they are doing  
 and try to correct them.  
 The people in Jerusalem do not trust in their God or worship him.

### ULB:

<sup>1</sup> Woe to the rebellious city! The violent city is defiled.  
<sup>2</sup> She has not listened to the voice of God, nor accepted correction from Yahweh.  
 She does not trust in Yahweh and will not approach her God.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

In verses 3:1-5, Zephaniah speaks Yahweh's message of judgment to the sinful people of Jerusalem. The city represents the people who live within it. To make this clear, it may be helpful to replace the singular "she" and "her" with the plural "they" and "their." (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### the rebellious city

The nature of their rebellion can be stated. AT: "the people of the city who have rebelled against God" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### The violent city is defiled

"The people of the city have committed violence and so I consider them unclean"

#### She has not listened to the voice of God

The voice is a metonym for what the speaker says with the voice, and listening is a metonym for obeying. AT: "She has not obeyed what God has said to her" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### translationWords

- woe
- rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled
- voice, voices
- God
- Yahweh
- trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

### Links:

- [Introduction to Zephaniah](#)
- [Zephaniah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 3 translationQuestions](#)



## Zephaniah 3:3-4

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> Their leaders are like roaring lions;  
 they are like wolves that attack during the evening,  
 and eat everything that they kill,  
 with the result that the next morning there is nothing left of those animals to eat.

<sup>4</sup> The prophets in Jerusalem are proud,  
 and the priests give messages that no one should trust.

They make the temple unholy by doing things that are against the law of Moses.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> Her princes are roaring lions in her midst.  
 Her judges are evening wolves who leave nothing to be gnawed upon in the morning.

<sup>4</sup> Her prophets are insolent and treasonous men.  
 Her priests have profaned what is holy and have done violence to the law.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

In verses 3:1-5, Zephaniah speaks Yahweh's message of judgment to the sinful people of Jerusalem. The city represents the people who live within it. To make this clear, it may be helpful to replace the singular "she" and "her" with the plural "they" and "their." (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Her princes are roaring lions in her midst

Lions roar to chase other animals away from the prey they have caught. The princes of Jerusalem are spoken of as if they were roaring lions who were keeping the prey for themselves. AT: "Jerusalem's royalty are as greedy as roaring lions" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Her judges are evening wolves who leave nothing to be gnawed upon in the morning

Wolves are especially hungry before they hunt at night. The judges are spoken of as if they were hungry wolves. AT: "Her judges are as greedy as hungry wolves that leave nothing for anyone else" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Her prophets are insolent and treasonous men**

“Her prophets do not listen to anyone and cannot be trusted”

**have profaned what is holy**

“have treated holy things with disrespect”

**have done violence to the law**

“have broken the law”

**translationWords**

- prince, princes, princess, princesses
- lions, lion, lioness, lionesses
- judge, judges, judgment, judgments
- wolf, wolves, wild dogs
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- priest, priests, priesthood
- profane, profaned, profaning
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Zephaniah](#)
- [Zephaniah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 3 translationQuestions](#)

## Zephaniah 3:5

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> But Yahweh is also in the city, and he never does what is wrong.  
 He treats people justly, day after day;  
 but wicked people are never ashamed about their wrongdoing.

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> Yahweh is righteous in her midst. He can do no wrong.  
 Morning by morning he will dispense his justice! It will not be hidden in the light, yet unrighteous people know no shame.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

In verses 3:1-5, Zephaniah speaks Yahweh's message of judgment to the sinful people of Jerusalem.

#### Yahweh is righteous ... He can do no wrong

These two phrases mean the same thing, and emphasize Yahweh's righteousness even among the wicked people in Jerusalem. (See: [Parallelism](#))

#### in her midst

"among them"

#### Morning by morning

This idiom means "Every day" or "Day after day." (See: [Idiom](#))

#### he will dispense his justice

Yahweh's just treatment of every person is spoken of as if he was handing out a commodity. AT: "he will treat people justly" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### It will not be hidden in the light

This uses a negative statement to emphasize the positive truth that Yahweh's justice is always visible. AT: "His justice is clearly shown to all" (See: [Litotes](#))

**know no shame**

“are not ashamed”

**translationWords**

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- wrong, wrongs, wronged, wrongly, wrongfully, wrongdoer, wrongdoing, mistreat, mistreated, hurt, hurts, hurting, hurtful
- just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification
- light, lights, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten, enlightened
- crime, crimes, criminal, criminals
- shame, shames, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, ashamed, unashamed

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Zephaniah](#)
- [Zephaniah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 3 translationQuestions](#)

**Zephaniah 3:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> Yahweh says this:

”I have destroyed many nations;

I have destroyed their strong city walls and towers.

Now I have caused the streets in those cities to be completely deserted.

Those cities are ruined and there is no one still alive there.

They are all dead.

<sup>7</sup> So I said to myself,

’Because of what I have done to those other nations,

surely the people of Jerusalem will honor me now

and allow me to correct them.

If they do that, I will not destroy them;

I will not punish them like I said that I would do.’

But in spite of knowing how I punished those other nations,

they were still eager to get up early each morning

and continue to perform evil deeds.”

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> ”I have destroyed nations; their fortresses are ruined.

I have made their streets ruins, so that no one passes over them.

Their cities are destroyed so that there is no man inhabiting them.

<sup>7</sup> I said, ’Surely you will fear me. Accept correction

and do not be cut off from your homes by all that I have planned to do to you.’

But they were eager to begin each morning by corrupting all their deeds.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

In verses 3:6-7, Yahweh rebukes the people of Jerusalem because they did not learn from how he judged other sinful cities. It may be helpful to add “Yahweh says this:” to the beginning of verse 6 to make this explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**I have made their streets ruins, so that no one passes over them. Their cities are destroyed so that there is no man inhabiting them**

These two sentences express the same idea in two different ways in order to emphasize the complete destruction of the cities. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**no one passes over them**

“no one walks on them”

**there is no man inhabiting them**

“no one lives there.” This can be stated in positive form. AT: “all the people are dead”

**I said, ‘Surely you will fear me ... I have planned to do to you.’**

This can be stated as an indirect quotation. AT: “I thought they would surely fear me and accept correction so that they would not be cut off from their homes by all that I have planned to do to them.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**and do not be cut off from your homes**

Here “cut off” is an idiom that means to be removed. This can be stated in active form. AT: “so that I will not remove you from your homes” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**by corrupting all their deeds**

“by doing deeds that were corrupt”

#### translationWords

- [nation, nations](#)
- [stronghold, strongholds, fortifications, fortified, fortress, fortresses](#)
- [ruin, ruins, ruined](#)
- [fear, fears, afraid](#)
- [cut off, cuts off, cutting off](#)
- [corrupt, corrupts, corrupted, corrupting, corruption, corruptly, incorruptibility](#)

#### Links:

- [Introduction to Zephaniah](#)
- [Zephaniah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 3 translationQuestions](#)

## Zephaniah 3:8

### UDB:

<sup>8</sup> This is what Yahweh declares:

”Wait for the day when I will take action to plunder you!

I have decided to gather the people of the kingdoms of the earth

and cause them to know that I am very angry with them.

All over the earth I will punish and destroy people;

I will burn them up with my anger as if it were fire!

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> Therefore wait for me—this is Yahweh’s declaration—until the day that I rise up to seize the prey.

For my decision is to assemble the nations, to gather the kingdoms,

to pour out on them my anger—all of my burning wrath;

for in the fire of my jealousy all the earth will be consumed. <sup>[1]</sup>

---

3:8 <sup>[1]</sup>The Hebrew text as *until the day that I rise up to seize the prey* . However, some ancient and modern versions have *until the day that I rise up as a witness* .

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

In verse 3:8, Yahweh warns that he will judge all nations.

#### wait for me ... until the day

This phrase implies that they are waiting for judgment.

#### this is Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. AT: “this is what Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**I rise up to seize the prey**

Yahweh's judgment on the nations is spoken of as if he was an hungry animal that attacked a smaller animal. AT: "I will rise up and destroy them as an animal seizes its prey" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to assemble the nations, to gather the kingdoms**

These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh will judge all of the nations. (See: [Doublet](#))

**my anger—all of my burning wrath**

The words "anger" and "burning wrath" mean basically the same thing and emphasize the intensity of Yahweh's anger. AT: "my very fierce wrath" (See: [Doublet](#))

**in the fire of my jealousy all the earth will be consumed**

This phrase can be stated in active form. AT: "the fire of my jealousy will devour all the land" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**in the fire of my jealousy ... consumed**

Yahweh's jealousy is here spoken of as if it were fire that could consume something. This can be stated as a simile. AT: "my jealousy will consume all the earth as a fire" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Simile](#))

**translationWords**

- [kingdom, kingdoms](#)
- [anger, angered, angry](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [devour, devours, devoured, devouring](#)
- [fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Zephaniah](#)
- [Zephaniah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 3 translationQuestions](#)



**Zephaniah 3:9-11****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> When that happens, I will cause all people to be changed  
and enable them to speak only what is pure,  
in order that everyone can worship me as one people.

<sup>10</sup> Then my people who were forced to go to other countries, those who live along the upper part  
of the Nile River in Ethiopia,  
will come to me and bring offerings to me.

<sup>11</sup> At that time, you people in Jerusalem will no longer be ashamed about what has happened to  
you,

because you no longer will be rebelling against me.

I will get rid of all the people among you who are very proud.

No one on Zion, my holy hill, will strut around proudly anymore.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> But then I will purify the lips of the peoples,  
that all of them may call upon the name of Yahweh to serve him shoulder to shoulder.

<sup>10</sup> From beyond the river of Cush my worshipers—my scattered people—will bring offerings  
due me.

<sup>11</sup> In that day you will not be put to shame for all your deeds that you committed against me,  
since at that time I will remove from among you those who celebrated your pride,  
and because you will no longer act arrogantly on my holy mountain.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

In verses 3:9-10, Yahweh says that he will renew the Gentiles after the judgment.

**General Information:**

In verses 3:11-13, Yahweh encourages the remnant of Israel who survive the judgment.

**I will purify the lips of the peoples**

Here “lips” refers to the ability to speak. AT: “I will cause the peoples to speak what is right” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**call upon the name of Yahweh**

This is an idiom that means they worship Yahweh. AT: “worship Yahweh” (See: [Idiom](#))

**serve him shoulder to shoulder**

Here “shoulder to shoulder” is an idiom that means “side by side.” (See: [Idiom](#))

**beyond the river of Cush**

This may refer to the area where Sudan is located today.

**In that day ... at that time**

“When that happens ... at that time.” These phrases here refer to the time of peace and restoration that immediately follows the day of Yahweh.

**will not be put to shame for all your deeds**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “will no longer be ashamed of all your deeds” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**those who celebrated your pride**

“all the people who are very proud”

**translationWords**

- pure, purify, purification
- name, names, named
- 
- Ethiopia, Ethiopian
- worship
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- shame, shames, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, ashamed, unashamed
- proud, proudly, pride, prideful
- arrogant, arrogantly, arrogance
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Zephaniah](#)
- [Zephaniah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 3 translationQuestions](#)

**Zephaniah 3:12-13****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> Those who are still alive in Israel will be poor and humble;  
they will trust in me.

<sup>13</sup> Those people who are still alive in Israel will not do anything wrong;  
they will tell no lies or deceive anyone.

They will eat and sleep safely,  
because no one will cause them to be afraid.”

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> But I will leave among you a lowly and poor people,  
and they will find refuge in the name of Yahweh.

<sup>13</sup> The remnant of Israel will no longer commit injustice or speak lies,  
and no deceitful tongue will be found in their mouth;  
so they will graze and lie down, and no one will make them afraid.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

In verses 3:11-13, Yahweh encourages the remnant of Israel who survive the judgment.

**I will leave among you a lowly and poor people ... The remnant of Israel**

The first phrase describes the “remnant” in the second phrase.

**they will find refuge in the name of Yahweh**

Yahweh’s protection of this remnant is spoke of as if he was a refuge or a fortress. Here “name of Yahweh” refers to his person. AT: “they will come to Yahweh and he will help them” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**commit injustice**

“do unjust things”

**no deceitful tongue will be found in their mouth**

Here “tongue ... in their mouth” represents the things that the tongue enables the mouth to speak. They can be stated in active form. AT: “none of them will speak deceitful things” or “they will not say deceitful things” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**they will graze and lie down**

Yahweh speaks of his provision for the people of Israel as if they are a flock of sheep that grazes and rests in safety. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [lowly, lowliest, lowliness](#)
- [refuge, refugee, refugees, shelter, shelters, sheltered, sheltering](#)
- [remnant](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceptive](#)
- [tongue, tongues](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Zephaniah](#)
- [Zephaniah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 3 translationQuestions](#)

**Zephaniah 3:14-16****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> You people who live in Jerusalem and other places in Israel,  
sing and shout loudly!

Be glad, and rejoice with all your inner being,

<sup>15</sup> because Yahweh will take away the charges against you,  
and he will make your enemies go enemies far away from you!

Yahweh himself, the king of the Israelites, will live among you,  
and you will never again be afraid that others will harm you.

<sup>16</sup> At that time, other people will say to us people of Jerusalem,  
“You people of Jerusalem, do not be afraid; do not become weak or discouraged.”

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> Sing, daughter of Zion! Shout, Israel.

Be glad and rejoice with all your heart, daughter of Jerusalem.

<sup>15</sup> Yahweh has taken away your punishment; he has driven out your enemies!

Yahweh is the king of Israel among you. You will never again fear evil!

<sup>16</sup> In that day they will say to Jerusalem,

”Do not fear, Zion. Do not let your hands falter.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

In verses 3:14-20, Zephaniah tells the remnant of Israel who survived the judgment that they should rejoice.

**daughter of Zion ... daughter of Jerusalem**

Here “daughter” refers to all the people who lived in the city. (See: [Idiom](#))

**Be glad and rejoice**

These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize how happy they should be. AT: “Be very happy” (See: [Doublet](#))

**with all your heart**

Here “heart” refers to the inner being of a person. AT: “with all your inner being” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Yahweh has taken away your punishment**

Here to “take away” punishment is an idiom that means to stop doing it. AT: “Yahweh has stopped punishing you” (See: [Idiom](#))

**You will never again fear evil**

The abstract noun “evil” can be stated as an action. AT: “You will no longer be afraid that people will harm you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**In that day**

“At that time” or “When this happens.” This phrase here refers to the time of peace and restoration that immediately follows the day of Yahweh.

**say to Jerusalem ... Zion**

The names of these cities here refer to the people who live in them. AT: “say to the people of Jerusalem ... people of Zion” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Do not let your hands falter**

To feel weak or helpless is spoken of as if their hands became physically weak. Here “hands” represents the whole person. AT: “Do not become weak” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

**translationWords**

- [Zion, Mount Zion](#)
- [joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Zephaniah](#)
- [Zephaniah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 3 translationQuestions](#)

**Zephaniah 3:17-18****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> Yahweh your God will live among you.

He is mighty, and he will rescue you.

He will be very happy about you;

because he loves you, he will cause you to rest without being anxious.

He will sing loudly to rejoice about you,

<sup>18</sup> like people who are happy at a festival. Yahweh says, "I will no longer allow any enemies to destroy you. You will no longer be defeated or ashamed.

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> Yahweh your God is among you, a mighty one to save you.

He will celebrate over you with joy; he will be silent over you in his love;

he will be glad over you with a shout for joy.

<sup>18</sup> I will gather those who grieve, those who cannot attend the appointed feasts, so you will no longer bear any shame for it. <sup>[1]</sup>

---

3:18 <sup>[1]</sup>This verse is very difficult to understand, and modern versions translate it in many different ways.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

In verses 3:14-20, Zephaniah tells the remnant of Israel who survived the judgment that they should rejoice.

**a mighty one to save you**

"he is mighty and will save you." Yahweh is spoken of as a mighty warrior. AT: "he is a mighty warrior and will give you victory" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**He will celebrate over you with joy ... he will be glad over you with a shout for joy**

These two phrases mean the same thing and are repeated to emphasize Yahweh's joy that the remnant is restored to him. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**he will be silent over you in his love**

Possible meanings are 1) “he will quiet you by his love for you” or 2) “he will renew you because he loves you.”

**no longer bear any shame for it**

Here shame is spoken of as if it was a heavy thing that a person had to carry. AT: “no longer be ashamed because of it” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [might, mighty, mightier, mightily](#)
- [save, saves, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing](#)
- [love, loves, loving, loved](#)
- [feast, feasts, feasting](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Zephaniah](#)
- [Zephaniah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 3 translationQuestions](#)



**Zephaniah 3:19-20****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> Truly, I will severely punish all those who oppressed you.

I will rescue those who are helpless and those who were forced to go to other countries, just as a shepherd would rescue his lost sheep.

I will give them praise and honor in every country where they were exiled, places where they had been disgraced.

<sup>20</sup> At that time, I will gather you together and bring you back home to Israel.

I will cause you to greatly praised and honored among all the nations of the earth.

You will see when I bring your people home again.”

This is what Yahweh, has declared!

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> Behold, I am about to deal with all your oppressors.

At that time, I will rescue the lame and gather up the outcast.

I will make them as praise, and I will change their shame into renown in all the earth.

<sup>20</sup> At that time I will lead you; at that time I will gather you together.

I will make all the nations of the earth respect and praise you, when you see that I restored you,” says Yahweh.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

In verses 3:19-20, Yahweh speaks directly to the remnant of Israel who survived the judgment and tells them that they should rejoice.

**Behold**

This tells the reader to pay special attention to what follows. AT: “Look” or “Pay attention”

**I am about to deal with all your oppressors**

It is understood that “deal with” means to punish the oppressors. This can be stated explicitly. AT: “I will severely punish all those who oppressed you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**I will rescue the lame and gather up the outcast**

Here the Israelites who suffered in exile are spoken of as if they were lame and outcast sheep. This can be stated as a simile. AT: “I will rescue and bring together the remnant of Israel who are like lame and outcast sheep” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Simile](#))

**the lame**

This refers to people or animals that cannot walk.

**I will make them as praise**

The full thought here is, “I will make them to be objects of praise,” that is, “I will make them to be praised by others.” (See: [Simile](#))

**I will change their shame into renown**

The abstract nouns “shame” and “renown” can be stated as actions. AT: “I will cause them to no longer be ashamed, but for people to respect them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**At that time I will lead you; at that time I will gather you together**

These two lines mean basically the same thing and imply that Yahweh will bring the exiled people back to their homeland. AT: “At that time I will gather you together and lead you home” (See: [Parallelism](#))

**translationWords**

- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Zephaniah](#)
- [Zephaniah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 3 translationQuestions](#)

## translationQuestions

### Zephaniah 1

**What did God tell Zephaniah he would do to the birds of the heavens, the fish of the sea and to man?**

God said He would destroy them and cut them off. [1:1]

**What did God tell Zephaniah he would do to the birds of the heavens, the fish of the sea and to man?**

God said He would destroy them and cut them off. [1:2]

**What is the name of the idol of which God said he would cut off every remnant?**

He would cut off every remnant of Baal. [1:4]

**Who did the ones on the housetops worship?**

The ones on the housetops worship the heavenly bodies. [1:5]

**What ere the people to do in the presence of Yahweh?**

They were to be silent in the presence of Yahweh. [1:7]

**Who did Yahweh say he would punish on the day of sacrifice?**

Yahweh will punish the princes and the king's sons, everyone dressed in foreign clothes, those who leap over the door sill, and those who fill their master's house with violence and deceit. [1:9]

**What sounds will come up from the Fish Gate and the Second Quarter in that day?**

A cry of distress, and wailing will come in that day. [1:10]

**What will happen to the merchants in that day?**

They will be ruined, and all those who are weighed down with silver will be cut off. [1:11]

**What did some of the men in Jerusalem say about Yahweh?**

They said, “Yahweh will not do anything, either good or evil!” [1:12]

**What day will be a day of fury, a day of anguish, and a day of darkness?**

The great day of Yahweh will be a day of fury, anguish, and darkness. [1:14]

**What day will be a day of fury, a day of anguish, and a day of darkness?**

The great day of Yahweh will be a day of fury, anguish, and darkness. [1:15]

**Whose blood will be poured out like dust on the day of Yahweh?**

Those who have sinned against God. [1:17]

**What will not be able to save them on that day?**

Their silver and their gold will not be able to save them. [1:18]

## Zephaniah 2

**What must the people do to avoid the fierce anger of Yahweh's wrath?**

The people must seek righteousness and humility to avoid Yahweh's wrath. [2:2]

**What must the people do to avoid the fierce anger of Yahweh's wrath?**

The people must seek righteousness and humility to avoid Yahweh's wrath. [2:3]

**What will happen to those who will not heed the warning of Yahweh?**

All peoples who will not heed the warning of Yahweh will be uprooted and destroyed. [2:4]

**What will happen to those who will not heed the warning of Yahweh?**

All peoples who will not heed the warning of Yahweh will be uprooted and destroyed. [2:5]

**What cities will Moab and Ammon become like?**

Moab will become like Sodom, and the people of Ammon like Gomorrah. [2:9]

**What kind of birds will nest in the top of Assyria's pillars?**

Owls will nest in the tops of Assyria's pillars. [2:14]

**What will become of the exultant city?**

The exultant city will become a horror, a place for beasts to lie down in. [2:15]

### **Zephaniah 3**

#### **What are the princes of the violent city like?**

The princes of the violent city are like roaring lions. [3:3]

#### **When will Yahweh dispense justice?**

Yahweh will dispense justice from morning to morning. [3:5]

#### **What did Yahweh hope the people would do?**

Yahweh hoped the people would fear him and accept correction. [3:7]

#### **What decision has Yahweh made about the nations?**

Yahweh has decided to assemble the nations and pour out his anger and wrath on them. [3:8]

#### **What will Yahweh then call the people to do?**

Yahweh will call the people to serve him standing shoulder to shoulder. [3:9]

#### **How will the remnant of Israel change after this?**

The remnant of Israel will no longer commit injustice and speak lies. [3:13]

#### **Why should Israel sing and cheer?**

Israel should sing and cheer because Yahweh has taken away their punishment. [3:14]

#### **Why should Israel sing and cheer?**

Israel should sing and cheer because Yahweh has taken away their punishment. [3:15]

#### **Who will Yahweh rescue from those who have mistreated Israel?**

Yahweh will rescue the lame and gather together the outcast. [3:19]

#### **Why will all the nations respect and praise Israel?**

All the nations will respect and praise Israel when they see that Yahweh has restored them. [3:20]

## **translationWords**

### **Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 3:9-11](#)

## Absalom

### Facts:

Absalom was the third son of King David. He was known for his handsome appearance and fiery temperament.

- When Absalom's sister Tamar was raped by their half-brother, Amnon, Absalom made a plan to have Amnon killed.
- After the murder of Amnon, Absalom fled to the region of Geshur (where his mother Maacah was from) and stayed there three years. Then King David sent for him to come back to Jerusalem, but did not allow Absalom to come into his presence for two years.
- Absalom turned some of the people against King David and led a revolt against him.
- David's army fought against Absalom and killed him. David was very grieved when this happened.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Geshur, Amnon)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:1-3
- 1 Kings 01:5-6
- 2 Samuel 15:1-2
- 2 Samuel 17:1-4
- 2 Samuel 18:18
- Psalm 003:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H53



## Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites

### Facts:

The “people of Ammon” or the “Ammonites” were a people group in Canaan. They were descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.

- The term “Ammonitess” refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as “Ammonite woman.”
- The Ammonites lived east of the Jordan River and were enemies of the Israelites.
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow him to do it.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: curse, Jordan River, Lot)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 19:1-3
- Ezekiel 25:1-2
- Genesis 19:36-38
- Joshua 12:1-2
- Judges 11:26-28
- [Zephaniah 02:8-9](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5983, H5984, H5985

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 2:8-9](#)

## anger, angered, angry

### Definition:

To “be angry” or to “have anger” means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, they are often sinful and selfish, but sometimes they have righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God’s anger (also called “wrath”) expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase “provoke to anger” means “cause to be angry.”

(See also: [wrath](#))

### Bible References:

- [Ephesians 04:25-27](#)
- Exodus 32:9-11
- Isaiah 57:16-17
- [John 06:52-53](#)
- [Mark 10:13-14](#)
- [Matthew 26:6-9](#)
- Psalms 018:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H599, H639, H1149, H2152, H2194, H2195, H2198, H2534, H2734, H2787, H3179, H3707, H3708, H3824, H4751, H4843, H5674, H5678, H6225, H7107, H7110, H7266, H7307, G23, G1758, G2371, G2372, G3164, G3709, G3710, G3711, G3947, G3949, G5520

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 2:1-3](#)
- [Zephaniah 3:8](#)

## arrogant, arrogantly, arrogance

### Definition:

The term “arrogant” means proud, usually in an obvious, outward way.

- An arrogant person will often boast about himself.
- Being arrogant usually includes thinking that other people are not as important or talented as oneself.
- People who do not honor God and who are in rebellion against him are arrogant because they do not acknowledge how great God is.

(See also: acknowledge, boast, **proud**)

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 04:17-18](#)
- [2 Peter 02:17-19](#)
- Ezekiel 16:49-50
- Proverbs 16:5-6
- Psalm 056:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1346, H1347, H6277

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 3:9-11](#)

## Ashdod, Azotus

### Facts:

Ashdod was one of the five most important cities of the Philistines. It was located in southwestern Canaan near the Mediterranean Sea, halfway between the cities of Gaza and Joppa.

- The temple of the Philistine's false god Dagon was located in Ashdod.
- God severely punished the people of Ashdod when the Philistines stole the ark of the covenant and put it in the pagan temple at Ashdod.
- The Greek name for this city was Azotus. It was one of the cities where the evangelist Philip preached the gospel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ekron](#), [Gath](#), [Gaza](#), [Joppa](#), [Philip](#), [Philistines](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 05:1-3
- [Acts 08:39-40](#)
- Amos 01:8
- Joshua 15:45-47
- [Zechariah 09:5-7](#)

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H795, G108

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 2:4-5](#)

## Ashkelon

### Facts:

In Bible times, Ashkelon was a major Philistine city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. It still exists in Israel today.

- Ashkelon was one of the five most important Philistine cities, along with Ashdod, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The Israelites did not completely conquer the people of Ashkelon, even though the kingdom of Judah occupied its hill country.
- Ashkelon remained occupied by the Philistines for hundreds of years.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Canaan](#), [Ekron](#), [Gath](#), [Gaza](#), [Philistines](#), [Mediterranean](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 06:17-18
- Amos 01:8
- Jeremiah 25:19-21
- Joshua 13:2-3
- Judges 01:18-19
- [Zechariah 09:5-7](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H831

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 2:4-5](#)

## Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrians, Assyrian Empire

### Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: Samaria)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11-14
- Genesis 25:17-18
- Isaiah 07:16-17
- Jeremiah 50:17-18
- Micah 07:11-13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:02** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **20:03** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **20:04** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H804, H1121

### Uses:

- **Zephaniah 2:12-14**

## Baal

### Facts:

“Baal” means “lord” or “master” and was the name of the primary false god that was worshiped by the Canaanites.

- There were also local false gods that had “Baal” as part of their names, such as “Baal of Peor.” Sometimes all these gods together are referred to as “the Baals.”
- Some people had names that included the word “Baal” in them.
- The worship of Baal included evil practices such as sacrificing children and using prostitutes.
- At different time periods throughout their history, the Israelites also became deeply involved in Baal worship, following the example of the pagan nations around them.
- During the reign of King Ahab, God’s prophet Elijah set up a test to prove to the people that Baal does not exist and that Yahweh is the only true God. As a result, the prophets of Baal were destroyed and the people started worshiping Yahweh again.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ahab, Asherah, Elijah, [false god](#), prostitute, [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:31-33
- 1 Samuel 07:3-4
- Jeremiah 02:7-8
- Judges 02:11-13
- Numbers 22:41

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:02** Ahab was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named **Baal**.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 prophets of **Baal**, came to Mount Carmel. Elijah said to the people, “How long will you keep changing your mind? If Yahweh is God, serve him! If **Baal** is God, serve him!”
- **19:07** Then Elijah said to the prophets of **Baal**, “Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire.
- **19:08** Then the prophets of **Baal** prayed to **Baal**, “Hear us, O **Baal**!”
- **19:12** So the people captured the prophets of **Baal**. Then Elijah took them away from there and killed them.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1120, G896

**Uses:**

- Zephaniah 1:4-6



## **Benaiah**

### **Definition:**

Benaiah was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- Benaiah son of Jehoiada was one of David's mighty men. He was a skilled warrior and was put in charge of David's bodyguards.
- When Solomon was being made king, Benaiah helped him overthrow his enemies. He eventually became commander of the Israelite army.
- Other men in the Old Testament named Benaiah include three Levites: a priest, a musician, and a descendant of Asaph.

(See also: Asaph, Jehoiada, Levite, Solomon)

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 04:34-38
- 1 Kings 01:7-8
- 2 Samuel 23:20-21

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1141

## blood

### Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus’ blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: flesh)

### Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:31-32](#)
- [Acts 02:20-21](#)
- [Acts 05:26-28](#)
- [Colossians 01:18-20](#)
- [Galatians 01:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 04:10-12](#)
- [Psalms 016:4](#)
- [Psalms 105:28-30](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.

- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb's **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's punishment passes over him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131, G1420

**Uses:**

- **Zephaniah 1:17-18**

## Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites

### Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ham, Promised Land)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 13:19-20](#)
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 09:18-19
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:5-7
- Genesis 47:1-2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:05** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **04:06** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **04:09** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **05:03** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G2581, G5478

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 2:4-5](#)

**cedar, cedars, cedarwood****Definition:**

The term “cedar” refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: fir, [pure](#), [sacrifice](#), temple)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 14:1-2
- 1 Kings 07:1-2
- Isaiah 02:12-13
- [Zechariah 11:1-3](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H730

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 2:12-14](#)

## chaff

### Definition:

Chaff is a dry protective covering of a grain seed. The chaff is not good for food so people separate it from the seed and throw it away.

- Often, the chaff is separated from the seed by throwing the heads of grain up into the air. The wind blows the chaff away and the seed falls on the ground. This process is called “winnowing.”
- In the Bible, this term is also used figuratively to refer to evil people and evil, worthless things.

(See also: grain, wheat, winnow)

### Bible References:

- Daniel 02:34-35
- Job 21:16-18
- [Luke 03:17](#)
- [Matthew 03:10-12](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2842, H4671, H5784, H8401, G892

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 2:1-3](#)

## Christ, Messiah

### Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Son of God, [David](#), Jesus, anoint)

### Bible References:

- [1 John 05:1-3](#)
- [Acts 02:34-36](#)
- [Acts 05:40-42](#)
- [John 01:40-42](#)
- [John 03:27-28](#)
- [John 04:25-26](#)
- [Luke 02:10-12](#)
- [Matthew 01:15-17](#)



**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **17:07** The **Messiah** was God's Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:08** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:01** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- **21:05** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:06** God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:07** "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:06** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 02 General Notes](#)

## column, columns, pillar, pillars

### Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: foundation, [false god](#), image)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4-5
- Exodus 13:19-22
- Exodus 33:7-9
- Genesis 31:45-47
- Proverbs 09:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H352, H547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G4769

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 2:12-14](#)

## **corrupt, corrupts, corrupted, corrupting, corruption, corruptly, incorruptibility**

### **Definition:**

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term to “corrupt” could be translated as to “influence to do evil” or to “cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term “corruption” could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: [evil](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- [Galatians 06:6-8](#)
- Genesis 06:11-12
- [Matthew 12:33-35](#)
- Psalm 014:1

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1097, H1605, H2254, H2610, H4167, H4743, H4889, H4893, H7843, H7844, H7845, G853, G861, G862, G1311, G1312, G2585, G2704, G4550, G4595, G5349, G5351, G5356

### **Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 3:6-7](#)

**crime, crimes, criminal, criminals****Definition:**

The term “crime” usually refers to a sin that involves breaking the law of a country or state. The term “criminal” refers to someone who has committed a crime.

- Types of crimes include such things as killing a person or stealing someone’s property.
- A criminal is usually captured and kept in some form of captivity such as a prison.
- In Bible times, some criminals became fugitives, wandering from place to place to escape people who wanted to harm them out of revenge for their crime.

(See also: thief)

**Bible References:**

- [2 Timothy 02:8-10](#)
- [Hosea 06:8-9](#)
- [Job 31:26-28](#)
- [Luke 23:32](#)
- [Matthew 27:23-24](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2154, H2400, H4639, H5771, H7563, H7564, G156, G1462, G2556, G2557, G4467

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 3:5](#)

## Cush

### Facts:

Cush was the oldest son of Noah's son Ham. He was also the ancestor of Nimrod. Two of his brothers were named Egypt and Canaan.

- In Old Testament times, "Cush" was the name of a large region of land south of Israel. It is probable that the land was named after Ham's son Cush.
- The ancient region of Cush covered an area of land that may have, at different times, included parts of the modern-day countries of Sudan, Egypt, Ethiopia, and possibly, Saudi Arabia.
- Another man named Cush is mentioned in the Psalms. He was a Benjamite.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Arabia, [Canaan](#), Egypt, [Ethiopia](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:8-10
- Ezekiel 29:8-10
- Genesis 02:13-14
- Genesis 10:6-7
- Jeremiah 13:22-24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3568, H3569, H3570

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 2:12-14](#)

## cut off, cuts off, cutting off

### Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, to “cut off” could be translated as, to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:12-14
- Judges 21:6-7
- Proverbs 23:17-18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1468, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H1824, H1826, H2498, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6202, H6789, H6990, H7082, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G609, G851, G1581, G2407, G5257

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 1:4-6](#)
- [Zephaniah 3:6-7](#)

## darkness

### Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: [corrupt](#), [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 John 02:7-8](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 05:4-7](#)
- [2 Samuel 22:10-12](#)
- [Colossians 01:13-14](#)
- [Isaiah 05:29-30](#)
- [Jeremiah 13:15-17](#)
- [Joshua 24:7](#)
- [Matthew 08:11-13](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4655, G4656

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 1:14-16](#)



## David

### Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Goliath, [Philistines](#), Saul (OT))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:32-34
- 2 Samuel 05:1-2
- [2 Timothy 02:8-10](#)
- [Acts 02:25-26](#)
- [Acts 13:21-22](#)
- [Luke 01:30-33](#)
- [Mark 02:25-26](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:02** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:03** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:04** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:05** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:06** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.

- **17:09 David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

## day of the Lord, day of Yahweh

### Description:

The Old Testament term “day of Yahweh” is used to refer to a specific time(s) when God would punish people for their sin.

- The New Testament term “day of the Lord” usually refers to the day or time when the Lord Jesus will come back to judge people at the end of time.
- This final, future time of judgment and resurrection is also sometimes referred to as the “last day.” This time will begin when the Lord Jesus comes back to judge sinners and will permanently establish his rule.
- The word “day” in these phrases may sometimes refer to a literal day or it may refer to a “time” or “occasion” that is longer than a day.
- Sometimes the punishment is referred to as a “pouring out of God’s wrath” upon those who do not believe.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “day of Yahweh” could include “time of Yahweh” or “time when Yahweh will punish his enemies” or “time of Yahweh’s wrath.”
- Other ways to translate “day of the Lord” could include “time of the Lord’s judgment” or “time when the Lord Jesus will return to judge people.”

(See also: [day](#), [judgment day](#), [Lord](#), [resurrection](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 05:3-5](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 05:1-3](#)
- [2 Peter 03:10](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 02:1-2](#)
- [Acts 02:20-21](#)
- [Philippians 01:9-11](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3068, H3117, G2250, G2962

### Uses:

- [Introduction to Zephaniah](#)
- [Zephaniah 01 General Notes](#)

- Zephaniah 1:7-9
- Zephaniah 1:14-16
- Zephaniah 02 General Notes
- Zephaniah 2:1-3
- Zephaniah 03 General Notes

## **deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceiver**

### **Definition:**

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit.”

- Another term “deception” also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: true)

### **Bible References:**

- [1 John 01:8-10](#)
- [1 Timothy 02:13-15](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 02:3-4](#)
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- [Matthew 27:62-64](#)
- Micah 06:11-12

translation *Words deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitful*

{{tag>publish review}}

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H6121, H6231, H6280, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8501, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1389, G1818, G3884, G4105, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423

#### **Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 1:7-9](#)
- [Zephaniah 3:12-13](#)

## decree, decrees, decreed

### Definition:

A decree is a proclamation or law that is publicly declared to all the people.

- God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- Like laws and commands, decrees must be obeyed.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.
- To decree something means to give an order that must be obeyed. This could be translated as to "order" or to "command" or to "formally require" or to "publicly make a law."
- Something that is "decreed" to happen means that this "will definitely happen" or "has been decided upon and will not be changed" or "declared absolutely that this will happen."

(See also: command, declare, law, proclaim)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:13-15
- 1 Kings 08:57-58
- [Acts 17:5-7](#)
- Daniel 02:12-13
- Esther 01:21-22
- [Luke 02:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H633, H1697, H5715, H1504, H1510, H1881, H1882, H1696, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2711, H2782, H2852, H2940, H2941, H2942, H3791, H3982, H4055, H4406, H4941, H5407, H5713, H6599, H6680, H7010, H8421, G1378

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 2:1-3](#)

## **defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled**

### **Definition:**

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: clean, clean)

### **Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 23:8-9
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27-29
- Genesis 49:3-4
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- **Mark 07:14-16**
- **Matthew 15:10-11**

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, H2933, H2936, H5953, G733, G2839, G2840, G3392, G3435, G4696, G5351



**Uses:**

- Zephaniah 3:1-2

## **desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses**

### **Definition:**

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as “wilderness.”
- “Wilderness” conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as “deserted place” or “remote place” or “uninhabited place.”

### **Bible References:**

- [Acts 13:16-18](#)
- [Acts 21:37-38](#)
- Exodus 04:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- [John 03:14-15](#)
- [Luke 01:80](#)
- [Luke 09:12-14](#)
- [Mark 01:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 04:1-4](#)
- [Matthew 11:7-8](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

### **Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 2:12-14](#)

## **devastate, devastated, devastating, devastation, devastations**

### **Definition:**

The term “devastated” or “devastation” refers to having one’s property or land ruined or destroyed. It also often includes destroying or capturing the people living on that land.

- This refers to a very severe and complete destruction.
- For example, the city of Sodom was devastated by God as punishment for the sins of the people living there.
- The term “devastation” can also include causing great emotional grief resulting from the punishment or destruction.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- The term “devastate” could be translated as “completely destroy” or “completely ruin.”
- Depending on the context, “devastation” could be translated as “complete destruction” or “total ruin” or “overwhelming grief” or “disaster.”

### **Bible References:**

- Daniel 08:24-25
- Jeremiah 04:13-15
- Numbers 21:29-30
- [Zephaniah 01:12-13](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1110, H1238, H2721, H1826, H3615, H3772, H7701, H7703, H7722, H7843, H8074, H8077

### **Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 1:12-13](#)
- [Zephaniah 2:4-5](#)
- [Zephaniah 2:12-14](#)

## devour, devours, devoured, devouring

### Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

### Bible References:

- [1 Peter 05:8-9](#)
- Amos 01:9-10
- Exodus 24:16-18
- Ezekiel 16:20-22
- [Luke 15:28-30](#)
- [Matthew 23:13-15](#)
- Psalms 021:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 3:8](#)

## **dung, manure**

### **Definition:**

The term “dung” refers to human or animal solid waste, and is also called feces or excrement. When used as fertilizer for enriching the soil, it is called “manure.”

- These terms can also be used figuratively to refer to something that is worthless or not important.
- Dried animal dung is often used for fuel.
- The expression “be like dung on the face of the earth” could be translated as “be scattered like worthless dung over the land.”
- The “Dung Gate” in the South Wall of Jerusalem was probably the gate where garbage and trash were taken out of the city.

(See also: gate)

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- 2 Kings 06:24-26
- Isaiah 25:9-10
- Jeremiah 08:1-3

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H830, H1119, H1557, H1561, H1686, H1828, H6569, H6675, G906, G4657

### **Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 1:17-18](#)

## earth, earthen, earthly

### Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [metonymy](#))
- The expressions “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: spirit, world)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- [Luke 12:51-53](#)
- [Matthew 06:8-10](#)
- [Matthew 11:25-27](#)
- [Zechariah 06:5-6](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G3749, G4578, G5517

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 2:10-11](#)

- [Zephaniah 3:19-20](#)

## Ekron, Ekronites

### Facts:

Ekron was a major city of the Philistines, located nine miles inland from the Mediterranean Sea.

- A temple of the false god Baal-zebub was located at Ekron.
- When the Philistines captured the ark of the covenant, they took it to Ashdod and then moved it to Gath and Ekron because God kept causing people to get sick and die in whatever city the ark was taken to. Finally the Philistines sent the ark back to Israel.
- When King Ahaziah fell through the roof of his house and injured himself, he sinned by trying to find out from the false god Baal-zebub of Ekron as to whether or not he would die from his injuries. Because of this sin, Yahweh said that he would die.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ahaziah, ark of the covenant, [Ashdod](#), Beelzebul, [false god](#), Gath, [Philistines](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 05:10
- Joshua 13:2-3
- Judges 01:18-19
- [Zechariah 09:5-7](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6138, H6139

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 2:4-5](#)



## **eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever**

### **Definition:**

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.
- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always happen or exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: *How to Translate Unknowns*)
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [reign](#), [life](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 17:7-8
- Genesis 48:3-4
- Exodus 15:17-18
- 2 Samuel 03:28-30
- 1 Kings 02:32-33
- Job 04:20-21
- Psalms 021:3-4
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 07:17-18
- Luke 18:18-21
- Acts 13:46-47
- Romans 05:20-21
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 01:1-2
- 1 John 05:11-12
- Revelation 01:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?"
- **28:01** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God's laws."
- **28:10** Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166, G1336

**Uses:**

- Zephaniah 2:8-9

## Ethiopia, Ethiopian

### Facts:

Ethiopia is a country in Africa located just south of Egypt, bordered by the Nile River to the west and by the Red Sea to the east. A person from Ethiopia is an “Ethiopian.”

- Ancient Ethiopia was located south of Egypt and included land that is now part of several modern-day African countries, such as Sudan, modern Ethiopia, Somalia, Kenya, Uganda, Central African Republic, and Chad.
- In the Bible, Ethiopia is sometimes called “Cush” or “Nubia.”
- The countries of Ethiopia (“Cush”) and Egypt are often mentioned together in the Bible, perhaps because they were located next to each other and their people may have had some of the same ancestors.
- God sent Philip the evangelist to a desert where he shared the good news about Jesus with an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Cush](#), Egypt, eunuch, Philip)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 08:26-28](#)
- [Acts 08:29-31](#)
- [Acts 08:32-33](#)
- [Acts 08:36-38](#)
- [Isaiah 18:1-2](#)
- [Nahum 03:8-9](#)
- [Zephaniah 03:9-11](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3568, H3569, H3571, G128

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 3:9-11](#)

## evil, wicked, wickedness

### Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), good, [righteous](#), demon)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:10-11
- [1 Timothy 06:9-10](#)
- [3 John 01:9-10](#)
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:1-3
- Job 08:19-20
- Judges 09:55-57
- [Luke 06:22-23](#)
- [Matthew 07:11-12](#)
- Proverbs 03:7-8
- Psalms 022:16-17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02:04](#) ”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”

- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** "You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!"
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2617, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

#### Uses:

- **Zephaniah 3:14-16**

## **ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins**

### **Definition:**

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [Acts 08:32-33](#)
- [Genesis 30:31-32](#)
- [John 02:13-14](#)
- [Luke 15:3-5](#)
- [Mark 06:33-34](#)
- [Matthew 09:35-36](#)
- [Matthew 10:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 12:11-12](#)
- [Matthew 25:31-33](#)

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 2:6-7](#)

**exult, exults, exulting, exultant****Definition:**

The terms “exult” and “exultant” refer to being very happy because of a success or special blessing.

- To “exult” includes a feeling of celebrating something wonderful.
- A person can exult in God’s goodness.
- The term “exultant” can also include being arrogant in one’s feeling of gladness about success or prosperity.
- The term “exult” could also be translated as “celebrate joyfully” or “praise with great joy.”
- Depending on the context, the term “exultant” could be translated as “praising triumphantly” or “celebrating with self praise” or “arrogant.”

(See also: [arrogant](#), [joy](#), [praise](#), [rejoice](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 02:1
- Isaiah 13:1-3
- Job 06:10-11
- Psalm 068:1-3
- [Zephaniah 02:15](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5539, H5947, H5970

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 2:15](#)



## **fear, fears, afraid**

### **Definition:**

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” as well as related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to a deep respect of God and the showing of that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, to “fear” can be translated as to “be afraid” or to “deeply respect” or to “revere” or to “be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” is used instead.

(See also: marvel, awe, [Lord](#), power, [Yahweh](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 John 04:17-18](#)
- [Acts 02:43-45](#)
- [Acts 19:15-17](#)
- Genesis 50:18-21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14-17
- Jonah 01:8-10
- [Luke 12:4-5](#)
- [Matthew 10:28-31](#)
- Proverbs 10:24-25

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032,

H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 2:10-11](#)
- [Zephaniah 3:6-7](#)

## **feast, feasts, feasting**

### **Definition:**

The term “feast” refers to an event where a group of people eat a very large meal together, often for the purpose of celebrating something. The action to “feast” means to eat a large amount of food or to participate in eating a feast together.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In Bible times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- A feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival)

### **Bible References:**

- [2 Peter 02:12-14](#)
- [Genesis 26:30-31](#)
- [Genesis 29:21-22](#)
- [Genesis 40:20-23](#)
- [Jude 01:12-13](#)
- [Luke 02:41-44](#)
- [Luke 14:7-9](#)
- [Matthew 22:1-3](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H398, H2077, H2282, H2287, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4580, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G755, G1062, G1173, G1403, G1456, G1858, G1859, G2165, G3521, G4910

### **Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 3:17-18](#)

**fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots****Definition:**

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: [pure](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:9-10
- [2 Thessalonians 01:6-8](#)
- [Acts 07:29-30](#)
- [John 15:5-7](#)
- [Luke 03:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 03:10-12](#)
- Nehemiah 01:3

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H215, H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 1:17-18](#)
- [Zephaniah 3:8](#)

## **flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- For example, in English the term “herd” can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
- The term “flock” in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
- For verses that refer to “flocks and herds” it may be better to add “of sheep” or “of cattle” for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: goat, ox, pig, [sheep](#), )

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:10-11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- [Luke 02:8-9](#)
- [Matthew 08:30-32](#)
- [Matthew 26:30-32](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G34, G4167, G4168

### **Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 2:6-7](#)

## Gaza

### Facts:

During Bible times, Gaza was a prosperous Philistine city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 38 kilometers south of Ashdod. It was one of the Philistines' five major cities.

- Because of its location, Gaza was a key seaport where commercial activities took place between many different people groups and nations.
- Today, the city of Gaza is still an important seaport in the Gaza Strip, which is a region of land located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea bordered by Israel on the north and east, and by Egypt on the south.
- Gaza was the city that the Philistines took Samson to after they had captured him.
- Philip the evangelist was walking along the desert road to Gaza when he met an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Philip](#), [Philistines](#), [Ethiopia](#), [Gath](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:24-25
- [Acts 08:26-28](#)
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Joshua 10:40-41
- Judges 06:3-4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5804, H5841, G1048

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 2:4-5](#)

## God

### Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: create, [false god](#), God the Father, Holy Spirit, [false god](#), Son of God, [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- [1 Timothy 04:9-10](#)
- [Colossians 01:15-17](#)
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2

- Genesis 01:1-2
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:18-20
- Jeremiah 05:4-6
- John 01:1-3
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Micah 04:4-5
- Philippians 02:5-8
- Proverbs 24:11-12
- Psalms 047:8-9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538



**Uses:**

- Zephaniah 2:6-7
- Zephaniah 3:1-2

## **god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry**

### **Definition:**

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: **God**, Asherah, **Baal**, Molech, demon, image, **kingdom**, **worship**)

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 35:1-3

- Exodus 32:1-2
- Psalms 031:5-7
- Psalms 081:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 15:19-21
- Acts 19:26-27
- Romans 02:21-22
- Galatians 04:8-9
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Colossians 03:5-8
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10

#### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H367, H410, H426, H430, H457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G1493, G1494, G1495, G1496, G1497, G2299, G2712

#### **Uses:**

- Introduction to Zephaniah
- Zephaniah 1:4-6
- Zephaniah 2:10-11

## gold, golden

### Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: altar, ark of the covenant, [false god](#), [silver](#), tabernacle, temple)

### Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:6-7](#)
- [1 Timothy 02:8-10](#)
- 2 Chronicles 01:14-15
- [Acts 03:4-6](#)
- Daniel 02:31-33

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1222, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H4062, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 1:17-18](#)

## Gomorrah

### Facts:

Gomorrah was a city located in a fertile valley near Sodom, where Abraham's nephew Lot chose to live.

- The exact location of Gomorrah and Sodom is unknown, but there are indications that they may have been located directly south of the Salt Sea, near the Valley of Siddim.
- There were many kings at war in the region where Sodom and Gomorrah were located.
- When Lot's family was captured in a conflict between Sodom and other cities, Abraham and his men rescued them.
- Not long after that, Sodom and Gomorrah were destroyed by God because of the wickedness of the people who lived there.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Abraham , Babylon, Lot, Salt Sea, [Sodom](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Peter 02:4-6](#)
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 14:1-2
- Genesis 18:20-21
- Isaiah 01:9
- [Matthew 10:14-15](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6017

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 2:8-9](#)

## **hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of**

### **Definition:**

There are several figurative ways that “hand” is used in the Bible:

- To “hand” something to someone means to put something into that person’s hands.
- The term “hand” is often used in reference to God’s power and action, such as when God says “Has not my hand made all these things?” (See: [metonymy](#))
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Some other figurative uses of “hand” include:
- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
- To “save from the hand of” means to stop someone from harming someone else.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, “by the hand of the Lord” means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term “laying on of hands” refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service or to pray for healing.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When “hand” refers to the person, such as in “the hand of God did this,” it could be translated as “God did this.”
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression

hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand

with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: adversary, bless, captive, honor, power)

**Bible References:**

- [Acts 07:22-25](#)
- [Acts 08:14-17](#)
- [Acts 11:19-21](#)
- [Genesis 09:5-7](#)
- [Genesis 14:19-20](#)
- [John 03:34-36](#)
- [Mark 07:31-32](#)
- [Matthew 06:3-4](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H405, H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G710, G1188, G1448, G1451, G1764, G2021, G2092, G2176, G2902, G4084, G4474, G4475, G5495, G5496, G5497

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 2:12-14](#)

## heart, hearts

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

### Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: hard)

### Bible References:

- [1 John 03:16-18](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 02:3-4](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 03:13-15](#)
- [Acts 08:20-23](#)
- [Acts 15:7-9](#)
- [Luke 08:14-15](#)
- [Mark 02:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 05:5-8](#)
- [Matthew 22:37-38](#)



**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G674, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 1:12-13](#)
- [Zephaniah 2:15](#)
- [Zephaniah 3:14-16](#)

## heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly

### Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the “kingdom of heaven” he is referring to the kingdom of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it could be translated as “God.”
- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- [1 Thessalonians 01:8-10](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:16-18](#)
- Deuteronomy 09:1-2
- [Ephesians 06:9](#)
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Genesis 07:11-12
- [John 03:12-13](#)
- [John 03:27-28](#)
- [Matthew 05:17-18](#)
- [Matthew 05:46-48](#)

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

**Uses:**

- **Zephaniah 1:1-3**

## Hezekiah

### Definition:

Hezekiah was the 13th king over the kingdom of Judah. He was a king who trusted and obeyed God.

- Unlike his father Ahaz, who had been an evil king, King Hezekiah was a good king who destroyed all the places of idol worship in Judah.
- One time when Hezekiah became very sick and almost died, he earnestly prayed that God would spare his life. God healed him and allowed him to live 15 more years.
- As a sign to Hezekiah that this would happen, God performed a miracle and caused the sun to move backwards in the sky.
- God also answered Hezekiah's prayer to save his people from King Sennacherib of Assyria, who was attacking them.

(See also: Ahaz, [Assyria](#), [false god](#), [Judah](#), Sennacherib)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:13-14
- 2 Kings 16:19-20
- Hosea 01:1-2
- [Matthew 01:9-11](#)
- Proverbs 25:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2396, H3169, G1478

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 1:1-3](#)

## **holy, holiness, unholy, sacred**

### **Definition:**

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was oftentimes used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”

- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, consecrate, sanctify, **set apart**)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 28:20-22
- 2 Kings 03:1-3
- Lamentations 04:1-2
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- **Matthew 07:6**
- **Mark 08:38**
- **Acts 07:33-34**
- **Acts 11:7-10**
- **Romans 01:1-3**
- **2 Corinthians 12:3-5**
- **Colossians 01:21-23**
- **1 Thessalonians 03:11-13**
- **1 Thessalonians 04:7-8**
- **2 Timothy 03:14-15**

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **09:12** “You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- **13:01** “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- **13:05** “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- **22:05** “So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

### Uses:

- **Zephaniah 3:3-4**
- **Zephaniah 3:9-11**

## **humble, humbles, humbled, humility**

### **Definition:**

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: [proud](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [James 01:19-21](#)
- [James 03:13-14](#)
- [James 04:8-10](#)
- [Luke 14:10-11](#)
- [Luke 18:13-14](#)
- [Matthew 18:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 23:11-12](#)

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [17:02](#) David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- [34:10](#) ”God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G858, G4236, G4239, G4240, G5011, G5012, G5013, G5391

### **Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 2:1-3](#)

## Israel, Israelites

### Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, **nation**, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- **Acts 02:34-36**
- **Acts 07:22-25**
- **Acts 13:23-25**
- **John 01:49-51**
- **Luke 24:21**
- **Mark 12:28-31**
- **Matthew 02:4-6**
- **Matthew 27:9-10**
- **Philippians 03:4-5**

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:01** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders.
- **16:16** So God punished **Israel** again for worshipping idols.



- **43:06** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 2:8-9](#)
- [Zephaniah 3:12-13](#)

## Jerusalem

### Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name “Jerusalem” is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include “Salem” “city of Jebus,” and “Zion.” Both “Jerusalem” and “Salem,” have the root meaning of “peace.”
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called “Zion” which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David’s son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going “up” to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: Babylon, [Christ](#), [David](#), Jebusites, Jesus, Solomon, temple, [Zion](#))

### Bible References:

- [Galatians 04:26-27](#)
- [John 02:13-14](#)
- [Luke 04:9-11](#)
- [Luke 13:4-5](#)
- [Mark 03:7-8](#)
- [Mark 03:20-22](#)
- [Matthew 03:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 04:23-25](#)
- [Matthew 20:17-19](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:05** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:02** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.

- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 1:4-6](#)
- [Zephaniah 3:14-16](#)

## Josiah

### Facts:

Josiah was a godly king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah for thirty-one years. He led the people of Judah to repent and worship Yahweh.

- After his father King Amon was killed, Josiah became king over Judah at eight years of age.
- In the eighteenth year of his reign, King Josiah ordered Hilkiah the high priest to rebuild the temple of the Lord. While this was being done, the books of the Law were found.
- When the books of the Law were read to Josiah, he was grieved at how his people were disobeying God. He ordered that all the places of idol worship be destroyed and that the priests of the false gods be killed.
- He also ordered the people to start celebrating the Passover feast again.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [false god](#), [Judah](#), law, Passover, temple)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 33:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 34:1-3
- Jeremiah 01:1-3
- [Matthew 01:9-11](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2977, G2502

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 1:1-3](#)

## **joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing**

### **Definition:**

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: [metonymy](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Nehemiah 08:9-10
- Psalm 048:1-3
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- [Matthew 02:9-10](#)
- [Luke 15:6-7](#)
- [Luke 19:37-38](#)
- [John 03:29-30](#)
- [Acts 16:32-34](#)

- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:22-24
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:15-18
- Philemon 01:4-7
- James 01:1-3
- 3 John 01:1-4

#### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:04** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H1750, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5938, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2165, G2167, G2620, G2744, G2745, G3685, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

#### Uses:

- Zephaniah 3:14-16
- Zephaniah 3:17-18

## Judah

### Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Jacob, Jew, Judah, Judea, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:9-10
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:1-2
- [Luke 03:33-35](#)
- Ruth 01:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 1:1-3](#)
- [Zephaniah 1:4-6](#)
- [Zephaniah 2:6-7](#)

## judge, judges, judgment, judgments

### Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), judge, judgment day, [just](#), law, [law](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 04:17-18](#)
- [1 Kings 03:7-9](#)
- [Acts 10:42-43](#)
- [Isaiah 03:13-15](#)
- [James 02:1-4](#)
- [Luke 06:37](#)
- [Micah 03:9-11](#)
- [Psalm 054:1-3](#)



**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G144, G350, G968, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1349, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4232

**Uses:**

- **Zephaniah 3:3-4**

**just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification****Definition:**

“Just” and “justice” refer to treating people fairly according to God’s laws. Human laws that reflect God’s standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be “just” is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God’s eyes.
- To act “justly” means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God’s laws.
- To receive “justice” means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term “just” has the broader meaning of “righteous” or “following God’s laws.”

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

The terms “justify” and “justification” refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- “Justification” refers to what God does when he forgives a person’s sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “just” could include “morally right” or “fair.”
- The term “justice” could be translated as “fair treatment” or “deserved consequences.”
- To “act justly” could be translated as “treat fairly” or “behave in a just way.”
- In some contexts, “just” could be translated as “righteous” or “upright.”
- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as, “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))

- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: forgive, guilt, **judge**, **righteous**, **righteous**)

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 44:16-17
- 1 Chronicles 18:14-17
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:1-3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 03:8
- **Matthew 05:43-45**
- **Matthew 11:18-19**
- **Matthew 23:23-24**
- **Luke 18:3-5**
- **Luke 18:6-8**
- **Luke 18:13-14**
- **Luke 21:20-22**
- **Luke 23:39-41**
- **Acts 13:38-39**
- **Acts 28:3-4**
- **Romans 04:1-3**
- **Galatians 03:6-9**
- **Galatians 03:10-12**
- **Galatians 05:3-4**
- **Titus 03:6-7**
- **Hebrews 06:9-10**
- **James 02:21-24**
- **Revelation 15:3-4**

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **17:09** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H2555, H3477, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G91, G93, G94, G1342, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1738

**Uses:**

- **Zephaniah 3:5**

## Kerethites

### Facts:

The Kerethites were a people group who were probably part of the Philistines. Some versions write this name as “Cherethites.”

- The “Kerethites and Pelethites” were a special group of soldiers from King David’s army who were especially devoted to him as his bodyguards.
- Benaiah, son of Jehoiada, a member of David’s administrative corps, was the leader of the Kerethites and Pelethites.
- The Kerethites remained with David when he had to flee Jerusalem because of Absalom’s revolt.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Absalom](#), [Benaiah](#), [David](#), [Philistines](#))

### Bible References:

- [Zephaniah 02:4-5](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3774

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 2:4-5](#)

## king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly

### Definition:

The term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king was usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king died, it was usually his oldest son who became the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term “king” was used to refer to someone who was not a true king, such as “King Herod” in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule over his people.
- Jesus was called “king of the Jews,” “king of Israel,” and “king of kings.”
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as “supreme chief” or “absolute leader” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” could be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, [kingdom](#), kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 06:15-16](#)
- [2 Kings 05:17-19](#)
- [2 Samuel 05:3-5](#)
- [Acts 07:9-10](#)
- [Acts 13:21-22](#)
- [John 01:49-51](#)
- [Luke 01:5-7](#)
- [Luke 22:24-25](#)
- [Matthew 05:33-35](#)
- [Matthew 14:8-9](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:06** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.

- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 1:1-3](#)
- [Zephaniah 1:7-9](#)
- [Zephaniah 3:14-16](#)

## kingdom, kingdoms

### Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, [king](#), kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, [Judah](#), Judah, [priest](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 02:10-12](#)
- [2 Timothy 04:17-18](#)
- [Colossians 01:13-14](#)
- [John 18:36-37](#)
- [Mark 03:23-25](#)
- [Matthew 04:7-9](#)
- [Matthew 13:18-19](#)
- [Matthew 16:27-28](#)
- [Revelation 01:9-11](#)



**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation."
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon's death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

**Uses:**

- **Zephaniah 3:8**

## **lamp, lamps**

### **Definition:**

The term “lamp” generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

The type of lamp that was used in Bible times is a small container with a fuel source, usually oil, that gives light when it burns.

- An ordinary oil lamp usually consisted of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.

(See also: lampstand, [life](#), [light](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 11:34-36
- Exodus 25:3-7
- [Luke 08:16-18](#)
- [Matthew 05:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 06:22-24](#)
- [Matthew 25:1-4](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3940, H3974, H4501, H5215, H5216, G2985, G3088

### **Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 1:12-13](#)

## law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

### Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God’s law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
- the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
- all the laws given to Moses
- the first five books of the Old Testament
- the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
- all of God’s instructions and will
- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

### Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: instruct, Moses, Ten Commandments, lawful, [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 15:5-6](#)
- Daniel 09:12-14
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- [Galatians 02:15-16](#)
- [Luke 24:44](#)
- [Matthew 05:17-18](#)
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

- [Romans 03:19-20](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.\
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.\
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.\
- **16:01** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.\
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.\
- **27:01** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"\
- **28:01** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."\<

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 3:3-4](#)

## **life, live, lived, lives, living, alive**

### **Definition:**

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by “physical life” and “spiritual life.”

### **1. Physical life**

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam’s body, and he became a living being.
- A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

### **2. Spiritual life**

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus with God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called “eternal life” to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives’ could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, “life” could be translated as “spiritual life” or “eternal life,” depending on the context.
- The concept of “spiritual life” could also be translated as “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: death, [everlasting](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Peter 01:3-4](#)
- [Acts 10:42-43](#)
- Genesis 02:7-8
- Genesis 07:21-22
- [Hebrews 10:19-22](#)
- Jeremiah 44:1-3
- [John 01:4-5](#)
- Judges 02:18-19
- [Luke 12:22-23](#)
- [Matthew 07:13-14](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 2:15](#)

## **light, lights, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten, enlightened**

### **Definition:**

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [holy](#), [righteous](#), true)

### **Bible References:**

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 John 02:7-8](#)
- [2 Corinthians 04:5-6](#)
- [Acts 26:15-18](#)
- [Isaiah 02:5-6](#)
- [John 01:4-5](#)
- [Matthew 05:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 06:22-24](#)
- [Nehemiah 09:12-13](#)
- [Revelation 18:23-24](#)

translationWords light, lights, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten, enlightened

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H4237, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H6348, H7052, H7837, G681, G796, G1645, G2985, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 3:5](#)



## **lions, lion, lioness, lionesses**

### **Definition:**

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [David](#), leopard, Samson, [sheep](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 1 Kings 07:27-29
- Proverbs 19:11-12
- Psalms 017:11-12
- [Revelation 05:3-5](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H738, H739, H744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G3023

### **Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 3:3-4](#)

## Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God

### Facts:

In the Old Testament, “Lord Yahweh” is frequently used to refer to the one true God.

- The term “Lord” is a divine title and “Yahweh” is God’s personal name.
- “Yahweh” is also often combined with the term “God” to form “Yahweh God.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If some form of “Yahweh” is used for the translation of God’s personal name, the terms “Lord Yahweh” and “Yahweh God” can be translated literally. Also consider how the term “Lord” is translated in other contexts when referring to God.
- Some languages put titles after the name and would translate this as “Yahweh Lord.” Consider what is natural in the project language: should the title “Lord” come before or after “Yahweh”?
- “Yahweh God” could also be rendered as “God who is called Yahweh” or “God who is the Living One” or “I am, who is God.”
- If the translation follows the tradition of rendering “Yahweh” as “Lord” or “LORD,” the term “Lord Yahweh” could be translated as “Lord God” or “God who is the Lord.” Other possible translations could be, “Master LORD” or “God the LORD.”
- The term “Lord Yahweh” *should not* be rendered as “Lord LORD” because readers may not notice the difference in letter size that has traditionally been used to distinguish these two words and it would look very strange.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [Lord](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 04:3-4](#)
- [2 Samuel 07:21-23](#)
- [Deuteronomy 03:23-25](#)
- [Ezekiel 39:25-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:18-20](#)
- [Jeremiah 44:26-28](#)
- [Judges 06:22-24](#)
- [Micah 01:2-4](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H136, H430, H3068, G2316, G2962

**Uses:**

- Zephaniah 1:7-9

## lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs

### Definition:

The term “lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULB and UDB, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: **God**, Jesus, ruler, **Yahweh**)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 39:1-2
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:1-4
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Ezekiel 18:29-30
- Daniel 09:9-11
- Daniel 09:17-19
- **Malachi 03:1-3**
- **Matthew 07:21-23**
- **Luke 01:30-33**
- **Luke 16:13**
- **Romans 06:22-23**
- **Ephesians 06:9**
- **Philippians 02:9-11**
- **Colossians 03:22-25**
- **Hebrews 12:14-17**
- **James 02:1-4**
- **1 Peter 01:3-5**
- **Jude 01:5-6**
- **Revelation 15:3-4**

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 1:7-9](#)

## love, loves, loving, loved

### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
2. Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
3. When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
4. In the ULB, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
5. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
6. This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
7. The term can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.
8. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.
9. In the figurative expression “Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated,” the term “loved” refers to God's choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as “chosen.” Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn't given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term “hated” is used figuratively here to mean “rejected” or “not chosen.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.

- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: covenant, death, [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 13:4-7](#)
- [1 John 03:1-3](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:9-12](#)
- [Galatians 05:22-24](#)
- Genesis 29:15-18
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 02:1-3
- [John 03:16-18](#)
- [Matthew 10:37-39](#)
- Nehemiah 09:32-34
- [Philippians 01:9-11](#)
- Song of Solomon 01:1-4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- **33:08** “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- **39:10** “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.



**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382, G5383, G5388

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 3:17-18](#)

## lowly, lowliest, lowliness

### Definition:

The terms “lowly” and “lowliness” refer to being poor or having low status. Being lowly can also have the meaning of being humble.

- Jesus humbled himself to the lowly position of becoming a human being and serving others.
- His birth was lowly because he was born in a place where animals were kept, not in a palace.
- Having a lowly attitude is the opposite of being proud.
- Ways to translate “lowly” could include “humble” or “of low status” or “unimportant.”
- The word “lowliness” could also be translated as “humility” or “little importance.”

(See also: [humble](#), [proud](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 20:17-21](#)
- [Ezekiel 17:13-14](#)
- [Luke 01:48-49](#)
- [Romans 12:14-16](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6041, H6819, H8217, G5011, G5012, G5014

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 3:12-13](#)

## **might, mighty, mightier, mightily**

### **Definition:**

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, miracle, power, strength)

### **Bible References:**

- [Acts 07:22-25](#)
- Genesis 06:4
- [Mark 09:38-39](#)
- [Matthew 11:23-24](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H46, H47, H117, H193, H202, H352, H386, H410, H430, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1370, H1396, H1397, H1401, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2394, H2428, H3201, H3524,

H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H5807, H5868, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H6697, H6743, H7227, H7580, H7989, H8623, H8624, H8632, G972, G1411, G1413, G1414, G1415, G1498, G1752, G1754, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3168, G3173, G5082

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 3:17-18](#)

## Moab, Moabite, Moabites

### Facts:

Moab was the son of Lot's elder daughter. It also became the name of the land where he and his family lived. The term "Moabite" refers to a person who is descended from Moab or who lives in the country of Moab.

- The country of Moab was located east of the Salt Sea.
- Moab was southeast from the town of Bethlehem where Naomi's family lived.
- The people in Bethlehem called Ruth a "Moabites" because she was a woman from the country of Moab. This term could also be translated as "Moabite woman" or "woman from Moab."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, Judea, Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 19:36-38
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 01:1-2
- Ruth 01:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4124, H4125

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 2:8-9](#)

## **mock, mocks, mocked, mocking, mocker, mockers, mockery, ridicule, ridiculed, scoff at, scoffed at**

### **Definition:**

The terms “mock,” ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A “mocker” is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.

### **Bible References:**

- [2 Peter 03:3-4](#)
- [Acts 02:12-13](#)
- [Galatians 06:6-8](#)
- [Genesis 39:13-15](#)
- [Luke 22:63-65](#)
- [Mark 10:32-34](#)
- [Matthew 09:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 20:17-19](#)
- [Matthew 27:27-29](#)

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **21:12** Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- **39:05** The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- **39:12** The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- **40:04** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”
- **40:05** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H5953, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8148, H8437, H8595, G1592, G1701, G1702, G1703, G2301, G2606, G3456, G5512

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 2:10-11](#)

## name, names, named

### Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” was used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [metonymy](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: call)

### Bible References:

- [1 John 02:12-14](#)
- [2 Timothy 02:19-21](#)
- [Acts 04:5-7](#)
- [Acts 04:11-12](#)
- [Acts 09:26-27](#)
- [Genesis 12:1-3](#)
- [Genesis 35:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 18:4-6](#)



**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 3:9-11](#)

## nation, nations

### Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), [Canaan](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [people group](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6-7
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- [Acts 02:5-7](#)
- [Acts 13:19-20](#)
- [Acts 17:26-27](#)
- [Acts 26:4-5](#)
- Daniel 03:3-5
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29

- Genesis 35:11-13
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:2-5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43-44
- Romans 04:16-17

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

**Uses:**

- Zephaniah 2:1-3
- Zephaniah 3:6-7

## Nineveh, Ninevite

### Facts:

Nineveh was the capital city of Assyria. A “Ninevite” was a person who lived in Nineveh.

- God sent the prophet Jonah to warn the Ninevites to turn from their wicked ways. The people repented and God did not destroy them.
- The Assyrians later stopped serving God. They conquered the kingdom of Israel and carried the people away to Nineveh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Assyria](#), Jonah, repent, turn)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11-14
- Jonah 01:1-3
- Jonah 03:1-3
- [Luke 11:32](#)
- [Matthew 12:41](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5210, G3535, G3536

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 2:12-14](#)

## Philistines

### Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Ashkelon](#), [David](#), [Ekron](#), [Gath](#), [Gaza](#), [Goliath](#), [Salt Sea](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 13:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 09:25-26
- Genesis 10:11-14
- Psalm 056:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6429, H6430

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 2:4-5](#)

## **priest, priests, priesthood**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, chief priests, high priest, mediator, [sacrifice](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 06:40-42
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:20-22

- [John 01:19-21](#)
- [Luke 10:31-32](#)
- [Mark 01:43-44](#)
- [Mark 02:25-26](#)
- [Matthew 08:4](#)
- [Matthew 12:3-4](#)
- [Micah 03:9-11](#)
- [Nehemiah 10:28-29](#)
- [Nehemiah 10:34-36](#)
- [Revelation 01:4-6](#)

#### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:07** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- **19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

#### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 1:4-6](#)
- [Zephaniah 3:3-4](#)

## prince, princes, princess, princesses

### Definition:

A “prince” is the son of a king. A “princess” is a daughter of a king.

- The term “prince” is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham’s wealth and importance, he was referred to as a “prince” by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term “prince” is used in the expressions “prince of Persia” and “prince of Greece,” which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a “prince” in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as “the prince of this world.”
- Jesus is called the “Prince of Peace” and the “Prince of Life.”
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as “Lord and Christ” and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as “Prince and Savior,” showing the parallel meaning of “Lord” and “Prince.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “prince” could include, “king’s son” or “ruler” or “leader” or “chieftain” or “captain.”
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, “spirit ruler” or “leading angel.”
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, “evil spirit ruler” or “powerful spirit leader” or “ruling spirit,” depending on the context.

(See also: angel, authority, [Christ](#), demon, [lord](#), power, ruler, Satan, Savior, spirit)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 05:29-32](#)
- Genesis 12:14-16
- Genesis 49:26
- [Luke 01:52-53](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H117, H324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7101, H7261, H7333, H7336, H7786, H7991, H8269, H8282, H8323, G747, G758, G1413, G2232, G3175



**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 1:7-9](#)
- [Zephaniah 3:3-4](#)

## profane, profaned, profaning

### Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb to “profane” could be translated as to “treat as unholy” or to “be irreverent toward” or to “dishonor.”
- God told the Israelites that they “profaned” themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves “unclean” or “dishonored” by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective “profane” could be translated as “dishonoring” or “godless” or “unholy.”

(See also: [defile](#), [holy](#), clean)

### Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 02:16-18](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:8-9](#)
- [Malachi 01:10-12](#)
- [Matthew 12:5-6](#)
- [Numbers 18:30-32](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2455, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2613, H5234, H8610, G952, G953

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 3:3-4](#)

## prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

### Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), divination, [false god](#), false prophet, fulfill, [law](#), vision)

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 02:14-16](#)
- [Acts 03:24-26](#)
- [John 01:43-45](#)
- [Malachi 04:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 01:22-23](#)

- [Matthew 02:17-18](#)
- [Matthew 05:17-18](#)
- [Psalm 051:1-2](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Zephaniah 3:3-4](#)

## **proud, proudly, pride, prideful**

### **Definition:**

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: [arrogant](#), [humble](#), [joy](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Timothy 03:6-7](#)
- [2 Corinthians 01:12-14](#)
- [Galatians 06:3-5](#)
- [Isaiah 13:19-20](#)
- [Luke 01:50-51](#)

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **04:02** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H2102, H2103, H2121, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7293, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7407, H7830, H8597, G212, G1391, G1392, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3173, G5187, G5229, G5243, G5244, G5308, G5309, G5426, G5450

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 2:10-11](#)
- [Zephaniah 3:9-11](#)

## **punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished**

### **Definition:**

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [repent](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 John 04:17-18](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 01:9-10](#)
- [Acts 04:21-22](#)
- [Acts 07:59-60](#)
- [Genesis 04:13-15](#)
- [Luke 23:15-17](#)
- [Matthew 25:44-46](#)

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **13:07** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **16:02** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **48:06** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.

- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's **punishment** passes over him.
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:11** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5414, H6031, H6064, H6213, H6485, H7999, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G2849, G3811, G5097

**Uses:**

- **Zephaniah 1:7-9**
- **Zephaniah 3:14-16**



## **pure, purify, purification**

### **Definition:**

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, clean, spirit)

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Timothy 01:5-8](#)
- [Exodus 31:6-9](#)
- [Hebrews 09:13-15](#)
- [James 04:8-10](#)
- [Luke 02:22-24](#)
- [Revelation 14:3-5](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G48, G49, G53, G54, G1506, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2514

**Uses:**

- Zephaniah 3:9-11

## rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

### Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebel” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, governor)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14-15
- **1 Timothy 01:9-11**
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- **Acts 21:37-38**
- **Luke 23:18-19**

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- **18:09** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- **18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- **20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- **45:03** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G3893, G4955

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 3:1-2](#)

## **refuge, refugee, refugees, shelter, shelters, sheltered, sheltering**

### **Definition:**

The term “refuge” refers to a place or condition of safety and protection. A “refugee” is someone who is seeking a safe place. A “shelter” refers to a place that can protect from weather or danger.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a refuge where his people can be safe, protected, and cared for.
- The term “city of refuge” in the Old Testament referred to one of several cities where a person who accidentally killed someone could go for protection from people who would attack them in revenge.
- A “shelter” is often a physical structure such as a building or roof that can provide protection to people or animals.
- Sometimes “shelter” means “protection,” as when Lot said that his guests were “under the shelter” of his roof. He was saying that they should be safe because he was taking responsibility to protect them as members of his household.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “refuge” could be translated as “safe place” or “place of protection.”
- “Refugees” are people leaving their home to escape from a dangerous situation, and could be translated as “aliens,” “homeless people,” or “exiles.”
- Depending on the context, the term “shelter” could be translated as “something that protects” or “protection” or “protected place.”
- If it refers to a physical structure, “shelter” could also be translated as “protective building” or “house of safety.”
- The phrase “into safe shelter” could be translated as “into a safe place” or “into a place that will protect.”
- To “find shelter” or to “take shelter” or to “take refuge” could be translated as to “find a place of safety” or to “put oneself in a protected place.”

### **Bible References:**

- 2 Samuel 22:3-4
- Deuteronomy 32:37-38
- Isaiah 23:13-14
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Numbers 35:24-25
- Psalm 046:1-3
- Psalms 028:6-8

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2620, H4268, H4498, H4585, H4733, H4869

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 3:12-13](#)

## remnant

### Definition:

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “left over” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” implies that there were other people who did not remain faithful or who did not survive or who were not chosen.

### Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who remain faithful” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

### Bible References:

- [Acts 15:15-18](#)
- Amos 09:11-12
- Ezekiel 06:8-10
- Genesis 45:7-8
- Isaiah 11:10-11
- Micah 04:6-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3498, H3499, H5629, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8281, H8300, G2640, G3005, G3062

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 1:4-6](#)
- [Zephaniah 2:6-7](#)
- [Zephaniah 2:8-9](#)
- [Zephaniah 3:12-13](#)

**restore, restores, restored, restoration****Definition:**

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 05:8-10
- [Acts 03:21-23](#)
- [Acts 15:15-18](#)
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Leviticus 06:5-7
- [Luke 19:8-10](#)
- [Matthew 12:13-14](#)
- Psalm 080:1-3

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 2:6-7](#)



## **righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness**

### **Definition:**

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good”
- Sometimes “the righteous” was used figuratively and referred to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: **evil**, faithful, good, **holy**, integrity, **just**, law, **law**, obey, **pure**, **righteous**, **sin**, unlawful)

#### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 19:15-16
- Job 01:6-8
- Psalms 037:28-30
- Psalms 049:14-15
- Psalms 107:41-43
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:12-13
- **Malachi 02:5-7**
- **Matthew 06:1-2**
- **Acts 03:13-14**
- **Romans 01:29-31**
- **1 Corinthians 06:9-11**
- **Galatians 03:6-9**
- **Colossians 03:22-25**
- **2 Thessalonians 02:8-10**
- **2 Timothy 03:16-17**
- **1 Peter 03:18-20**
- **1 John 01:8-10**
- **1 John 05:16-17**

#### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.

- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118, G3716, G3717

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 2:1-3](#)
- [Zephaniah 3:5](#)

## ruin, ruins, ruined

### Definition:

To “ruin” something means to spoil, destroy, or cause to be useless. The term “ruin” or “ruins” refers to the rubble and spoiled remains of something that has been destroyed.

- The prophet Zephaniah spoke about the day of God’s wrath as a “day of ruin” when the world will be judged and punished.
- The book of Proverbs says that ruin and destruction await those who are ungodly.
- Depending on the context, to “ruin” could be translated as to “destroy” or to “spoil” or to “make useless” or to “break.”
- The term “ruin” or “ruins” could be translated as “rubble” or “broken-down buildings” or “destroyed city” or “devastation” or “brokenness” or “destruction,” depending on the context.

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 12:7-8
- 2 Kings 19:25-26
- [Acts 15:15-18](#)
- Isaiah 23:13-14

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6, H1197, H1530, H1820, H1942, H2034, H2040, H2717, H2719, H2720, H2723, H2930, H3510, H3765, H3782, H3832, H4072, H4288, H4383, H4384, H4654, H4658, H4876, H4889, H5221, H5557, H5754, H5856, H6365, H7451, H7489, H7582, H7591, H7612, H7701, H7703, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, H8510, G2679, G2692, G3639, G4485

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 3:6-7](#)

## sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression “offer yourselves as a living sacrifice” means, “live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him.”

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: altar, burnt offering, drink offering, **false god**, fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, **priest**, sin offering, **worship**)

### Bible References:

- **2 Timothy 04:6-8**
- **Acts 07:41-42**
- **Acts 21:25-26**
- Genesis 04:3-5
- **James 02:21-24**
- **Mark 01:43-44**
- **Mark 14:12-14**
- **Matthew 05:23-24**

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4469, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 1:7-9](#)
- [Zephaniah 3:9-11](#)

## save, saves, saved, safe, salvation

### Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, deliver, [punish](#), [sin](#), Savior)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 49:16-18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:1-3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- [Luke 02:30-32](#)

- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:11-12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:20-21
- Romans 01:16-17
- Romans 10:8-10
- Ephesians 06:17-18
- Philippians 01:28-30
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8668, G803, G804, G806, G1295, G1508, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

### Uses:

- Zephaniah 1:17-18
- Zephaniah 3:17-18



## set apart

### Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to “set apart” could include to “specially select” or to “separate from among you” or to “take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), sanctify, appoint)

### Bible References:

- [Ephesians 03:17-19](#)
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12-13
- Numbers 03:11-13
- [Philippians 01:1-2](#)
- [Romans 01:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G40, G873

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 1:7-9](#)

## **shame, shames, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, ashamed, unashamed**

### **Definition:**

The term “shame” refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their sin so that they feel ashamed of themselves.
- The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- God can bring shame to a person who does not repent by exposing that person’s sin and causing him to be humiliated.

(See also: [false god](#), [humble](#), humiliate, Isaiah, repent, [sin](#), [worship](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Peter 03:15-17](#)
- [2 Kings 02:17-18](#)
- [2 Samuel 13:13-14](#)
- [Luke 20:11-12](#)
- [Mark 08:38](#)
- [Mark 12:4-5](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H937, H954, H955, H1317, H1322, H2616, H2659, H2781, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H6172, H7022, H7036, H8103, H8106, G127, G149, G152, G153, G422, G808, G818, G819, G821, G1788, G1791, G1870, G2617, G3856, G5195

### **Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 3:5](#)
- [Zephaniah 3:9-11](#)

## shepherd, shepherds, shepherded, shepherding

### Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb to “shepherd” means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water. Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.

- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people’s spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the “shepherd” of his people because he took care of all their needs and protected them. He also led and guided them. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the “good shepherd.” The apostle Paul also referred to him as the “great shepherd” over the Church.
- Also, in the New Testament, the term “shepherd” was used to refer to a person who was a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as “pastor” is the same word that is translated as “shepherd.” The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

### Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- The person “shepherd” could be translated as “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- In some contexts, “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- The spiritual expression to “shepherd” could be translated as to “take care of” or to “spiritually nourish” or to “guide and teach” or to “lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep).”
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for “shepherd” in the translation of this term.

(See also: believe, [Canaan](#), church, Moses, pastor, [sheep](#), spirit)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 49:24

- Luke 02:8-9
- Mark 06:33-34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 02:4-6
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 25:31-33
- Matthew 26:30-32

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **09:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.
- **17:02** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:06** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- **23:08** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G750, G4165, G4166

**Uses:**

- Zephaniah 2:6-7

## silver

### Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, temple)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- [Acts 03:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 26:14-16](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 1:10-11](#)

## sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), flesh, tax collector)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 1 John 02:1-3
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19-20
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Genesis 04:6-7
- Hebrews 12:1-3
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- Jeremiah 18:21-23
- Leviticus 04:13-15
- Luke 15:17-19
- Matthew 12:31-32
- Romans 06:22-23
- Romans 08:3-5

#### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 1:17-18](#)



## Sodom

### Definition:

Sodom was a city in the southern part of Canaan where Abraham's nephew Lot lived with his wife and children.

- The land of the region surrounding Sodom was very well watered and fertile, so Lot chose to live there when he first settled in Canaan.
- The exact location of this city is not known because Sodom and the nearby city of Gomorrah were completely destroyed by God as punishment for the evil things the people there were doing.
- The most significant sin that the people of Sodom and Gomorrah were practicing was homosexuality.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Gomorrah](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:12-13
- [Matthew 10:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 11:23-24](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5467, G4670

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 2:8-9](#)

**stronghold, strongholds, fortifications, fortified, fortress, fortresses****Definition:**

The terms “stronghold” and “fortress” both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. The term “fortified” describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses were manmade structures with defensive walls. They could also have been places with natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortified strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that made it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- “Stronghold” or “fortress” could be translated as “securely strong place” or “strongly protected place.”
- The term “fortified city” could be translated as “securely protected city” or “strongly built city.”
- This term was also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Another figurative meaning for the term “stronghold” referred to something that someone wrongly trusted in for security, such as a false god or other thing that was worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as “false strongholds.”
- This term should be translated differently from “refuge,” which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: [false god](#), [false god](#), [refuge](#), [Yahweh](#))

**Bible References:**

- [2 Corinthians 10:3-4](#)
- 2 Kings 08:10-12
- 2 Samuel 05:8-10
- [Acts 21:34-36](#)
- Habakkuk 01:10-11

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H490, H553, H759, H1001, H1002, H1003, H1219, H1225, H2388, H4013, H4026, H4581, H4526, H4679, H4685, H4686, H4692, H4693, H4694, H4869, H5794, H5797, H5800, H6438, H6696, H6877, H7682, G3794, G3925

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 3:6-7](#)

## sword, swords, swordsmen

### Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

### Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [tongue](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 12:1-2](#)
- [Genesis 27:39-40](#)
- [Genesis 34:24-26](#)
- [Luke 02:33-35](#)
- [Luke 21:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 10:34-36](#)
- [Matthew 26:55-56](#)
- [Revelation 01:14-16](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 2:12-14](#)

## **terror, terrorize, terrorized, terrors, terrify, terrified, terrifying**

### **Definition:**

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as, “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: adversary, [fear](#), [judge](#), plague, [Yahweh](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 02:24-25
- Exodus 14:10-12
- [Luke 21:7-9](#)
- [Mark 06:48-50](#)
- [Matthew 28:5-7](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H367, H926, H928, H1091, H1161, H1204, H1763, H2111, H2189, H2283, H2731, H2847, H2851, H2865, H3372, H3707, H4032, H4048, H4172, H4288, H4637, H6184, H6206, H6343, H6973, H8541, G1629, G1630, G2258, G4422, G4426, G5401

### **Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 1:17-18](#)

## tongue, tongues

### Definition:

There are several figurative meanings of “tongue” in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is “language” or “speech.”
- Sometimes “tongue” may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the “gifts of the Spirit.”
- The expression “tongues” of fire refers to “flames” of fire.
- In the expression “my tongue rejoices,” the term “tongue” refers to the whole person. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- The phrase “lying tongue” refers to a person’s voice or speech. (See: [metonymy](#))

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “tongue” can be translated by “language” or “spiritual language.” If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as “language.”
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as “flames.”
- The expression “my tongue rejoices” could be translated as “I rejoice and praise God” or “I am joyfully praising God.”
- The phrase, “tongue that lies” could be translated as “person who tell lies” or “people who lie.”
- Phrases such as “with their tongues” could be translated as “with what they say” or “by their words.”

(See also: gift, Holy Spirit, [joy](#), praise, [rejoice](#), spirit)

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 12:9-11](#)
- [1 John 03:16-18](#)
- 2 Samuel 23:1-2
- [Acts 02:25-26](#)
- Ezekiel 36:1-3
- [Philippians 02:9-11](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H762, H2013, H2790, H3956, G1100, G1258, G1447, G2084

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 3:12-13](#)

## trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters

### Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel’s public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: angel, assembly, [earth](#), horn, [Israel](#), [wrath](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 09:11-13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- [Hebrews 12:18-21](#)
- [Matthew 06:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 24:30-31](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G4536, G4537, G4538

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 1:14-16](#)



## trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

### Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: believe, confidence, faith, faithful, true)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- [1 Timothy 04:9-10](#)
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:12-14
- Psalm 031:5-7
- [Titus 03:8](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12:12](#) When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- [14:15](#) Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [17:02](#) David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [34:06](#) Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 3:1-2](#)

## **vineyard, vineyards**

### **Definition:**

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [vine](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [Genesis 09:20-21](#)
- [Luke 13:6-7](#)
- [Luke 20:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 20:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 21:40-41](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: [H64](#), [H1612](#), [H3657](#), [H3661](#), [H3754](#), [H3755](#), [H8284](#), [G289](#), [G290](#)

### **Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 1:12-13](#)

## voice, voices

### Definition:

The term “voice” is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

- God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn’t have a voice in the same way a human being does.
- This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as “A person is heard calling out in the desert...” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- To “hear someone’s voice” could also be translated as “hear someone speaking.”
- Sometimes the word “voice” may be used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the “voice” of the heavens proclaims God’s mighty works. This could also be translated as “their splendor shows clearly how great God is.”

(See also: call, proclaim, splendor)

### Bible References:

- [John 05:36-38](#)
- [Luke 01:42-45](#)
- [Luke 09:34-36](#)
- [Matthew 03:16-17](#)
- [Matthew 12:19-21](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456, G5586

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 3:1-2](#)

**woe****Definition:**

The term “woe” refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

- The expression “woe to” is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
- In several places in the Bible, the word “woe” is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
- A person who says “woe is me” or “woe to me” is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “woe” could also be translated as “great sorrow” or “sadness” or “calamity” or “disaster.”
- Other ways to translate the expression “Woe to (name of city)” could include, “How terrible it will be for (name of city)” or “The people in (that city) will be severely punished” or “Those people will suffer greatly.”
- The expression, “Woe is me!” or “Woe to me!” could be translated as “How sad I am!” or “I am so sad!” or “How terrible this is for me!”
- The expression “Woe to you” could also be translated as “You will suffer terribly” or “You will experience terrible troubles.”

**Bible References:**

- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Habakkuk 02:12-14
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Jeremiah 45:1-3
- [Jude 01:9-11](#)
- [Luke 06:24-25](#)
- [Luke 17:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 23:23-24](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H188, H190, H337, H480, H1929, H1945, H1958, G3759

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 2:4-5](#)

- Zephaniah 3:1-2

## wolf, wolves, wild dogs

### Definition:

A wolf is a fierce, meat-eating animal that is similar to a wild dog.

- Wolves usually hunt in groups and stalk their prey in a clever and stealthy manner.
- In the Bible, the term “wolves” is used figuratively to refer to false teachers or false prophets who destroy believers, who are compared to sheep. False teaching causes people to believe wrong things that bring harm to them.
- This comparison is based on the fact that sheep are especially vulnerable to being attacked and eaten by wolves, because they are weak and cannot defend themselves.

### Translation Suggestion

- This term could be translated as “wild dog” or “wild animal.”
- Other names for wild dogs could be “jackal” or “coyote.”
- When used figuratively to refer to people, this could be translated as “evil people who harm people like animals that attack sheep.”

(See also: [evil](#), false prophet, [sheep](#), teach)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 20:28-30](#)
- [Isaiah 11:6-7](#)
- [John 10:11-13](#)
- [Luke 10:3-4](#)
- [Matthew 07:15-17](#)
- [Zephaniah 03:3-4](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2061, H3611, G3074

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 3:3-4](#)

## **word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God’s word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”
- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: [prophet](#), true, word, [Yahweh](#))



### Bible References:

- Genesis 15:1-3
- 1 Kings 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 08:11-13
- John 05:39-40
- Acts 06:2-4
- Acts 12:24-25
- Romans 01:1-3
- 2 Corinthians 06:4-7
- Ephesians 01:13-14
- 2 Timothy 03:16-17
- James 01:17-18
- James 02:8-9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:07** In **God's word** he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.'
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, 'The seed is the **word of God**.'
- **42:03** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:07** Jesus said, 'I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled.' Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

### Uses:

- Zephaniah 1:1-3

## worship

### Definition:

To “worship” means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Some people worshiped false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), praise, honor)

### Bible References:

- [Colossians 02:18-19](#)
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Exodus 03:11-12
- [Luke 04:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 02:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 02:7-8](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 2:10-11](#)
- [Zephaniah 3:9-11](#)

## wrath, fury

### Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

- In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 01:8-10](#)
- [1 Timothy 02:8-10](#)
- [Luke 03:7](#)
- [Luke 21:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 03:7-9](#)
- [Revelation 14:9-10](#)
- [Romans 01:18-19](#)
- [Romans 05:8-9](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G2372, G3709, G3949, G3950

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 1:17-18](#)
- [Zephaniah 2:1-3](#)
- [Zephaniah 3:8](#)

**wrong, wrongs, wronged, wrongly, wrongfully, wrongdoer, wrongdoing, mistreat, mistreated, hurt, hurts, hurting, hurtful**

**Definition:**

To “wrong” someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term “mistreat” means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term “hurt” is more general and means to “cause someone harm in some way.” It often has the meaning of “physically injure.”
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as “do wrong to” or, “treat unjustly” or “cause harm to” or treat in a harmful way” or “injure.”

**Bible References:**

- [Acts 07:26-28](#)
- Exodus 22:20-21
- Genesis 16:5-6
- [Luke 06:27-28](#)
- [Matthew 20:13-14](#)
- Psalms 071:12-13

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H816, H2248, H2250, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7667, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, G91, G92, G93, G95, G264, G824, G983, G984, G1536, G1626, G1651, G1727, G1908, G2556, G2558, G2559, G2607, G3076, G3077, G3762, G4122, G5195, G5196

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 3:5](#)

## Yahweh

### Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name that he revealed when he spoke to Moses at the burning bush.

- The name “Yahweh” comes from the word that means, to “be” or to “exist.”
- Possible meanings of “Yahweh” include, “he is” or “I am” or “the one who causes to be.”
- This name reveals that God has always lived and will continue to live forever. It also means that he is always present.
- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULB and UDB texts always translates this term as, “Yahweh,” as it literally occurs in the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” does not ever occur in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even in quotes from the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.
- By adding the pronoun “I” or “me,” the ULB indicates to the reader that God is the speaker.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [Lord](#), [Moses](#), [reveal](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 21:19-20
- 1 Samuel 16:6-7
- Daniel 09:3-4
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 02:4-6
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 28:12-13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:3-4
- Isaiah 38:7-8
- Job 12:9-10
- Joshua 01:8-9
- Lamentations 01:4-5
- Leviticus 25:35-38
- Malachi 03:4-5
- Micah 02:3-5
- Micah 06:3-5
- Numbers 08:9-11
- Psalm 124:1-3
- Ruth 01:19-21
- Zechariah 14:5

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **09:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:05** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

**Uses:**

- Zephaniah 1:1-3

- Zephaniah 1:12-13
- Zephaniah 2:1-3
- Zephaniah 3:1-2



## Zephaniah

### Facts:

Zephaniah, son of Cushi, was a prophet who lived in Jerusalem and prophesied during the reign of King Josiah. He lived during the same time period as Jeremiah.

- He rebuked the people of Judah for worshipping false gods. His prophecies are written in the book of Zephaniah in the Old Testament.
- There were several other men in the Old Testament named Zephaniah, most of whom were priests.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Jeremiah, [Josiah](#), [priest](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 25:18-19
- Jeremiah 52:24-25
- [Zechariah 06:9-11](#)
- [Zephaniah 01:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6846

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 1:1-3](#)

## Zion, Mount Zion

### Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: Abraham, [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), Bethlehem, Jebusites)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
- Amos 01:1-2
- Jeremiah 51:34-35
- Psalm 076:1-3
- [Romans 11:26-27](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6726### Uses:
- [Zephaniah 3:14-16](#)

## translationAcademy

### Abstract Nouns

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its weight?" could be expressed as "How much does it weigh?" or "How heavy is it?"

#### Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Using abstract nouns allows people to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if they did not have those nouns. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people can talk about them as though they were things. It is like a short-cut in language. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if the language did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then they would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. They would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

#### Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun.

#### Examples from the Bible

*...from childhood you have known the sacred writings ...* (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But godliness with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

### Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun..

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.
2. ... **from childhood you have known the sacred writings** ... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
  - Ever since you were a child you have known the sacred writings.
3. **But godliness with contentment is great gain.** (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
  - But being godly and content is very beneficial.
  - But we benefit greatly when we are godly and content.
  - But we benefit greatly when we honor and obey God and when we are happy with what we have.
4. **Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.** (Luke 19:9 ULB)
  - Today the people in this house have been saved...
  - Today God has saved the people in this house...

5. **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be.** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

- The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider moving slowly to be.

6. **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart.** (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

- He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 2:1-3](#)
- [Zephaniah 2:12-14](#)
- [Zephaniah 3:14-16](#)
- [Zephaniah 3:19-20](#)

## Active or Passive

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

### Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

### Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that have it.

### Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

### Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.

- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

### Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants were killed, and your servant Uriah the Hittite was killed too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal was broken down ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULB)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

### Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. **A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)

- The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

3. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”
4. **It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea.** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
  - It would be better for him if they were to put a millstone around his neck and throw him into the sea.
  - It would be better for him if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and throw him into the sea.
5. Use a different verb in an active sentence.
6. **A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
  - He received a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

**Uses:**

- Zephaniah 2:1-3
- Zephaniah 2:12-14
- Zephaniah 3:6-7
- Zephaniah 3:8
- Zephaniah 3:9-11
- Zephaniah 3:12-13



## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker gives the audience information in two ways:
- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, you can include this information in the text or in a footnote.

### Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here “I am the Son of Man” but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

### Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

- **Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:20 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.
  - Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes to live in, and the birds of the sky have nests to live in, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."
- **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.
  - ... it will be more tolerable for those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked, at the day of judgment than for you
    - ◇ Or:
  - ... it will be more tolerable for those wicked cities Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you
- **Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat.** (Matthew 15:2 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.
  - Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness when they eat.

2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

- **Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULB) - Implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.
  - Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live."
- **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULB) - Implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.
  - At the day of judgment, God will punish Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked, less severely than he will punish you

- At the day of judgment, God will punish you more severely than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 1:1-3](#)
- [Zephaniah 1:7-9](#)
- [Zephaniah 1:7-9](#)
- [Zephaniah 1:10-11](#)
- [Zephaniah 1:17-18](#)
- [Zephaniah 2:8-9](#)
- [Zephaniah 2:15](#)
- [Zephaniah 3:1-2](#)
- [Zephaniah 3:6-7](#)
- [Zephaniah 3:19-20](#)

## Direct and Indirect Quotations

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

### Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotation and indirect quotation.

A **direct quotation** occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: ""

- John said, "I do not know at what time I will arrive."

An **indirect quotation** occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead of from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually features changes in pronouns, and it often features changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would," to replace the future tense indicated by "will."

- John said that he did not know at what time he would arrive.

### Why this is a translation issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one rather than the other, or there is a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation.

### Examples from the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have underlined the quotations.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULB)

- Indirect quote: He instructed him to tell no one,
- Direct quote: but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest..."

Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULB)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come,
- Direct quote: Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you."
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, 'Look here; or, 'Look there!'

### Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
2. **He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."** (Luke 5:14 ULB)
  - He instructed him to tell no one, but to go on his way, and to show himself to the priest and to offer a sacrifice for his cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."
3. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.
4. **He instructed him, to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."** (Luke 5:14 ULB)
  - He instructed him, "Tell no one. Just go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_quotations](http://ufw.io/figs_quotations).

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 3:6-7](#)

## Doublet

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

### Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing or very close to the same thing and that are used together. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

### Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. In either case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

### Examples from the Bible

King David was old and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”

... he attacked two men more righteous and better than himself ... (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

... as of a lamb without blemish and without spot. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.

### Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

### Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. **You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)
  - "You have decided to prepare false things to say."
3. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."
4. **King David was old and advanced in years.** (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)
  - "King David was very old."
5. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.
6. **... a lamb without blemish and without spot...** (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."
  - " ... a lamb without any blemish at all ..."

### Uses:

- Zephaniah 1:14-16
- Zephaniah 1:14-16
- Zephaniah 1:14-16
- Zephaniah 1:14-16
- Zephaniah 1:14-16
- Zephaniah 1:14-16
- Zephaniah 1:14-16
- Zephaniah 2:1-3
- Zephaniah 3:8
- Zephaniah 3:8
- Zephaniah 3:14-16



## Ellipsis

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis?*

### Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is if they do not use ellipsis in their language.

### Examples from the Bible

... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox. (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

### Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.
2. ... **the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.** (Psalm 1:5)
  - ... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and sinners will not stand in the assembly of the righteous
3. ... **when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.”** (Luke 18:40-41)
  - ... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.”
4. **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
  - He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox.

**Uses:**

- **Zephaniah 1:4-6**

## First, Second, or Third Person

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker referred to himself or to the person he was speaking to with a phrase other than “I” or “you.”

### Description

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

### Reason this is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker used the third person to refer to himself or to the people he was speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

### Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “Your servant used to keep his father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULB)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like God’s? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULB)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULB)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

### Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
2. **But David said to Saul, “Your servant used to keep his father’s sheep.”** (1 Samuel 17:34)
  - But David said to Saul, “I, your servant, used to keep my father’s sheep.”
3. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.
4. **Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like God’s? Can you thunder with a voice like him?”** (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)
  - Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like mine? Can you thunder with a voice like me?”
5. **So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart.** (Matthew 18:35 ULB)
  - So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive your brother from your heart.

### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 1:1-3](#)
- [Zephaniah 1:7-9](#)
- [Zephaniah 1:10-11](#)
- [Zephaniah 1:10-11](#)
- [Zephaniah 1:12-13](#)
- [Zephaniah 2:8-9](#)
- [Zephaniah 3:8](#)

## How to Translate Names

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

### Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

### Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

### Examples from the Bible

You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

She named him Moses and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

### Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
    - You went over the Jordan River and came to the city of Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the tribe of the Amorites
  - **Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you."** (Luke 13:31 ULB)
    - Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because King Herod wants to kill you."
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
- **She named him Moses and said, "Because I drew him from the water."** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
    - She named him Moses, which sounds like 'drawn out,' and said, "Because I drew him from the water."
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
- **... she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
    - ... she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Well of the Living One who sees me;
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.
5. **... a young man named Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
- ... a young man named Paul<sup>1</sup>
  - The footnote would look like:
    - <sup>[1]</sup>Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.
6. **But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9)
- But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;
7. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."
8. **a young man named Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULB)

- a young man named Saul
- The footnote would look like:
  - <sup>[1]</sup>This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

9. **But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9)

- But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

10. **It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue**  
(Acts 14:1 ULB)

- It came about in Iconium that Paul<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue
- The footnote would look like:
  - <sup>[1]</sup>This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

**Uses:**

- **Introduction to Zephaniah**



## Hyperbole and Generalization

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations?*

### Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something he means as completely true, as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement.

- It rains here every night.
- The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
- The speaker means this as a generalization if he means that it rains here most nights.
- The speaker means this as a hyperbole if he wants to say it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy.

**Hyperbole:** This is a figure of speech that uses **exaggeration**. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave one stone upon another (Luke 19:44 ULB)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

**Generalization:** This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame, but honor will come to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles may have done this.

Even though a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” it does not necessarily mean **exactly** “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never.” It simply means “most,” “most of the time,” “hardly any” or “rarely.”

Moses was educated in all the learning of the Egyptians (Acts 7:22 ULB)

- This generalization means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

**Reason this is a translation issue**

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is completely true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not completely true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

**Examples from the Bible****Examples of Exaggeration**

If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

**Examples of Generalization**

They found him, and they said to him, "Everyone is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him.

But as his anointing teaches you about all things and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God's Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know, not about everything that is possible to know.

**Caution**

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

... they saw Jesus walking on the sea and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”

Yahweh is righteous in all his ways and gracious in all he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULB)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

### Translation Strategies

If the exaggeration or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a generalization, add a word like “most” or “almost” to show that the generalization is not exact.
4. For a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore.** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
  - The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and a great number of troops.
3. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
4. **The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame ...** (Proverbs 13:18 ULB)
  - In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame
5. **And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)
  - “And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles generally do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”
6. For a generalization, add a word like “most” or “almost” to show that the generalization is not exact.
7. **The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.** (Mark 1:5 ULB)
  - Almost all the country of Judea and almost all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”

- Most of the country of Judea and most of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”
8. For a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.
  9. **The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.** (Mark 1:5 ULB)
    - The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 1:1-3](#)

## Idiom

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

### Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears. (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

**Purpose:** An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

### Examples from the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."  
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, "We and you belong to the same race, the same family."

the children of Israel went out with a high hand. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

the one who lifts up my head (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, "the one who helps me."

### Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."**  
( 1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
  - ...Look, we all belong to the same nation.
3. **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
  - He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.
4. **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
  - I am not worthy that you should enter my house.
5. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.
6. **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
  - Be all ears when I say these words to you.
7. **"My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7 ULB)
  - I am crying my eyes out

**Uses:**

- Zephaniah 1:1-3
- Zephaniah 1:4-6
- Zephaniah 1:4-6
- Zephaniah 1:7-9
- Zephaniah 1:7-9
- Zephaniah 1:12-13
- Zephaniah 1:12-13
- Zephaniah 2:8-9
- Zephaniah 2:15
- Zephaniah 3:5
- Zephaniah 3:6-7
- Zephaniah 3:9-11
- Zephaniah 3:9-11
- Zephaniah 3:14-16
- Zephaniah 3:14-16

## Litotes

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

### Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are “no,” “not,” “none,” and “never.” The opposite of “good” is “bad.” Someone could say that something is “not bad” to mean that it is extremely good.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

### Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was very useful.

Now when it became day, there was no small excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULB)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a lot of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah, are not the least among the leaders of Judah, for from you will come a ruler who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULB)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a very important city.

### Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the positive meaning in a strong way.



**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the positive meaning in a strong way.
2. **For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless.** (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)
  - "For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you did much good."
3. **Now when it became day, there was no small excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.** (Acts 12:18 ULB)
  - "Now when it became day, there was great excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."
  - "Now when it became day, the soldiers were very concerned because of what had happened to Peter."

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 3:5](#)

## Merism

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

### Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULB)

I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULB)

Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth ..., (Matthew 11:25 ULB)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

### Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULB)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

### Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. **I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth ...** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
  - I praise you, Father, Lord of everything ...
3. **From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised.** (Psalm 113:3 ULB)
  - In all places, people should praise Yahweh's name.
4. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.
5. **I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth.** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
  - I praise you, Father, Lord of everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.
6. **He will bless those who honor him, both young and old.** (Psalm 115:13 ULB)
  - He will bless all those who honor him, regardless of whether they are young or old.

**Uses:**

- [Zephaniah 1:12-13](#)

## Metaphor

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?*

### Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which one concept (the “image”) stands for another concept (the “topic”). That is, the topic is spoken of as if it were the image. For example, someone might say,

- The girl I love is a red rose.

Here the topic is “the girl I love,” and the image is “a red rose.” The girl is spoken of as if she were a red rose.

Anything in a language can serve as a metaphor. For example, verb forms can be used in unusual ways, as in,

- The Apostle Paul tells us that Christians will rise to life again.

In this case, the English present tense form “tells” is a metaphor for the past tense form “told,” because the Apostle Paul lived long ago.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique.

Speakers most often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

### Kinds of Metaphors

There are several kinds of metaphors: “live” metaphors, “dead” metaphors, and patterned metaphors.

#### Live Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept. People also easily recognize them as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

Here is another example: Jesus said, ‘Go and tell that fox...,’ where “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was referring to Herod either as a very evil, cunning person or as a king who was only pretending to be great.

### Dead Metaphors

A dead metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” “leaf” meaning a page in a book, and “crane” meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads. English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples in Biblical Hebrew are probably “heal” meaning “repair,” and “sick” meaning “spiritually powerless because of sin.”

### Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP often stands for the concept of MORE. Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going *up*,” “A *highly* intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The heat is going *down*,” and “The stock market *took a tumble*.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that could be seen or held, as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat *up*.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us *go ahead* with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You *defend* your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A *flow* of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view them as unusual expressions, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

### Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. A metaphor has three parts.

1. **Topic** - The thing someone speaks of is called the topic.

2. **Image** - The thing he calls it is the image.
3. **Points of Comparison** - The ways in which the author claims that the topic and image are similar in some manner are their points of comparison.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a red rose. The woman (his “love”) is the **topic**, and “red rose” is the **image**. Beauty and delicacy are the points of comparison that the speaker sees as similarities between both the topic and image. Note, however, that a rose’s beauty is not identical to a woman’s beauty. Neither are the two kinds of delicacy the same. So these points of comparison are not built upon identical characteristics, but rather upon characteristics that are seen by the writer as similar in some way.

- My love is a red, red rose.

Often, as in the metaphor above, the speaker explicitly states the **topic** and the **image**, but he does not state the points of comparison. The speaker leaves it to the hearer to think of those points of comparison. Because the hearers must do that, the speaker’s message tends to be more powerful.

Also in the Bible, normally the **topic** and the **image** are stated clearly, but not the points of comparison. The writer hopes that the audience will understand the points of comparison that are implied.

Jesus said to them. “I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.” (John 6:35 ULB)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **topic** is “I,” and the **image** is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. The point of comparison between bread and Jesus is that people needed bread every day for nourishment. In a similar way, people need Jesus every day in order to live spiritually.

Note that this metaphor is really several metaphors. The first metaphor is that bread is used to represent Jesus. The second metaphor, which is inside the first one, is that physical life represents the spiritual life, which consists of living with God forever. The third metaphor is that eating bread represents benefitting from Jesus, who enables us to live with God forever.

### Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel about the other.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.

- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker is thinking of and wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.

### Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

### Examples from the Bible

Listen to this word, you cows of Bashan, (Amos 4:1 ULB)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria (the topic is “you”) with as if they were cows (the image). Amos does not say what points of comparison between these women and the cows he has in mind, but from the context it seems that he means that both the women and the cows are fat and interested only in eating.

Note, however, that Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows, for he speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two related metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you,” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” The intended point of comparison between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish: the potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people Israel. The point of comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that both the clay and the people of Israel are made into something different from what they were before.

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor, and the topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers probably understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression of a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language. (See Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns for lists of some of these patterned pairs of concepts.)
2. If the metaphor seems to be a “live” metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).
4. If the target audience would not know the image, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience will not know the intended points of comparison between the image and topic, then state them clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is a common expression of a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. **Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet.** (Mark 5:22 ULB)
  - Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, immediately bowed down in front of him.
3. If the metaphor seems to be a “live” metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
4. **It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,** (Mark 10:5 ULB)
  - It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,

There is no change to this one - but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.



1. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
2. **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
  - And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are like clay. You are like a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.
3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
4. **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
  - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick.
5. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
  - ”And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the wood. You are our carver; and we all are the work of your hand.”
  - ”And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the string. You are the weaver; and we all are the work of your hand.”
7. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
8. **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
  - Yahweh lives; He is my rock. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
9. If the target audience will not know the intended points of comparison between the image and the topic, then state them clearly.
10. **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
  - Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock under which I can hide from my enemies. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
11. **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
  - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner’s pointed stick.
12. If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.
13. **I will make you become fishers of men.** (Mark 1:17 ULB)
  - I will make you become people who gather men.
  - Now you gather fish. I will make you gather people.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*.

**Uses:**

- Zephaniah 1:1-3
- Zephaniah 1:4-6
- Zephaniah 1:4-6
- Zephaniah 1:7-9
- Zephaniah 1:10-11
- Zephaniah 1:12-13
- Zephaniah 1:17-18
- Zephaniah 2:1-3
- Zephaniah 2:4-5
- Zephaniah 3:3-4
- Zephaniah 3:3-4
- Zephaniah 3:5
- Zephaniah 3:8
- Zephaniah 3:8
- Zephaniah 3:12-13
- Zephaniah 3:12-13
- Zephaniah 3:14-16
- Zephaniah 3:17-18
- Zephaniah 3:17-18
- Zephaniah 3:19-20

## Metonymy

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

### Description

**Metonymy** is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and the blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

### Metonymy can be used

- to a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

### Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

### Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or "reign." This means that God would make him become the king that would follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

... who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

## Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
  - "He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "The wine in this cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."
3. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.
4. **The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
  - "The Lord God will give him the kingly authority of his father, David."
  - "The Lord God will make him king like his ancestor, King David."
5. **who warned you to flee from the wrath to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
  - "who warned you to flee from God's coming punishment?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies.

## Uses:

- Zephaniah 1:14-16
- Zephaniah 1:14-16
- Zephaniah 1:14-16
- Zephaniah 2:1-3
- Zephaniah 2:1-3
- Zephaniah 2:12-14
- Zephaniah 2:12-14
- Zephaniah 2:15
- Zephaniah 3:1-2
- Zephaniah 3:1-2
- Zephaniah 3:3-4
- Zephaniah 3:9-11
- Zephaniah 3:12-13
- Zephaniah 3:12-13
- Zephaniah 3:14-16
- Zephaniah 3:14-16

## Parallelism

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

### Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term “synonymous parallelism” for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term **Doublet** for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

### Examples from the Bible

#### The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULB)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

**The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.**

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere, keeping watch over the evil and the good.  
(Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

**The second completes what is said in the first.**

I lift up my voice to Yahweh, and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

**The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.**

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous, but the way of the wicked will perish.  
(Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath, but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

### Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. **Until now you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13, ULB) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.
  - “Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”
3. **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

- “Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”
4. **For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel.** (Micah 6:2 ULB) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:
    - “For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”
  5. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
  6. **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB)
    - “Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”
  7. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”
  8. **you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13 ULB)
    - “All you have done is lie to me.”
  9. **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB)
    - “Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

**Uses:**

- Zephaniah 1:10-11
- Zephaniah 2:1-3
- Zephaniah 2:4-5
- Zephaniah 2:8-9
- Zephaniah 2:8-9
- Zephaniah 3:5
- Zephaniah 3:6-7
- Zephaniah 3:17-18
- Zephaniah 3:19-20

## Personification

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

### Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

Or sin:

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were like relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

### Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

### Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.



### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. ... **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.
  - ... sin is at your door, waiting to attack you
3. Use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
4. ... **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”
  - ... sin is crouching at the door, just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person.
5. Find a way to translate it without the personification.
6. ... **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea as if they are able to hear” and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
  - He even controls the winds and the sea.

**Note:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics.)

#### Uses:

- [Zephaniah 2:15](#)

## Simile

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

### Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves, so be as wise as serpents and harmless as doves. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

### Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

### Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, as a good soldier of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lightning flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

### Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
  - See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves.
3. **For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword.** (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
  - For the word of God is living and active and more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword
4. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
5. **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

- See, I send you out as chickens in the midst of wild dogs,
6. **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
- How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
7. **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard,** (Matthew 17:20)
- If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed,
8. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.
9. **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
- See, I send you out and people will want to harm you.
10. **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
- How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!

**Uses:**

- Zephaniah 1:17-18
- Zephaniah 1:17-18
- Zephaniah 1:17-18
- Zephaniah 1:17-18
- Zephaniah 2:1-3
- Zephaniah 2:8-9
- Zephaniah 2:12-14
- Zephaniah 3:8
- Zephaniah 3:19-20
- Zephaniah 3:19-20

## Synecdoche

This page answers the question: *What does the word synecdoche mean?*

### Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”  
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

### Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments.

### Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.
2. **“My soul exalts the Lord.”** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
  - “I exalt the Lord.”
3. **...the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)

- ...a representative of the Pharisees said to him ...
- 4. ... **I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished** ... (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
  - I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

**Uses:**

- Zephaniah 3:14-16